

SPECIFICATIONS AND BID ITEMS
FOR THE
**CONSTRUCTION OF SOUTH COUNTY ROAD 1232
EXTENSION
AT MONAHAN'S DRAW**

COUNTY JUDGE

Terry Johnson

COUNTY COMMISSIONERS

Scott Ramsey – Precinct 1

Robin Donnelly – Precinct 2

Luis D. Sanchez – Precinct 3

Randy Prude – Precinct 4

PREPARED BY



Dunaway No. B001484.006

March 2021

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART A – Standard Specifications

PART B – CONTECH BridgeCor Specifications

PART C – Guide Schedule of Sampling and Testing – June 2019**

PART D – Geotechnical Report of Existing Conditions

PART E – Bid Quantities

**Laboratory and Field Testing to be provided by the County and is not considered a part of this bid.

PART A

STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

Item 100

Preparing Right of Way



1. DESCRIPTION

Prepare the right of way and designated easements for construction operations by removing and disposing of all obstructions when removal of such obstructions is not specifically shown on the plans to be paid by other Items.

2. CONSTRUCTION

Protect designated features on the right of way and prune trees and shrubs as directed. Do not park equipment, service equipment, store materials, or disturb the root area under the branches of trees designated for preservation. Treat cuts on trees with an approved tree wound dressing within 20 min. of making a pruning cut or otherwise causing damage to the tree when shown on the plans. Follow all local and state regulations when burning. Pile and burn brush at approved locations as directed. Coordinate work with state and federal authorities when working in state or national forests or parks. Test, remove, and dispose of hazardous materials in accordance with Article 6.10., "Hazardous Materials."

Clear areas shown on the plans of all obstructions, except those landscape features that are to be preserved. Such obstructions include remains of houses and other structures, foundations, floor slabs, concrete, brick, lumber, plaster, septic tank drain fields, basements, abandoned utility pipes or conduits, equipment, fences, retaining walls, and other items as specified on the plans. Remove vegetation and other landscape features not designated for preservation, curb and gutter, driveways, paved parking areas, miscellaneous stone, sidewalks, drainage structures, manholes, inlets, abandoned railroad tracks, scrap iron, and debris, whether above or below ground. Removal of live utility facilities is not included in this Item. Remove culverts, storm sewers, manholes, and inlets in proper sequence to maintain traffic and drainage.

Notify the Engineer in writing when items not shown on the plans and not reasonably detectable (buried with no obvious indication of presence) are encountered and required to be removed. These items will be handled in accordance with Article 4.5., "Differing Site Conditions."

Remove obstructions not designated for preservation to 2 ft. below natural ground in areas receiving embankment. Remove obstructions to 2 ft. below the excavation level in areas to be excavated. Remove obstructions to 1 ft. below natural ground in all other areas. Cut trees and stumps off to ground level when allowed by the plans or directed. Plug the remaining ends of abandoned underground structures over 3 in. in diameter with concrete to form a tight closure. Backfill, compact, and restore areas where obstructions have been removed unless otherwise directed. Use approved material for backfilling. Dispose of wells in accordance with Item 103, "Disposal of Wells."

Accept ownership, unless otherwise directed, and dispose of removed materials and debris at locations off the right of way in accordance with local, state, and federal requirements.

3. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by the acre; by the 100-ft. station, regardless of the width of the right of way; or by each tree removed.

4. PAYMENT

For "acre" and "station" measurement, the work performed in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Preparing Right of Way." For "each"

measurement, the work performed in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Preparing Right of Way (Tree)" of the diameter specified. This price is full compensation for pruning of designated trees and shrubs; removal and disposal of structures and obstructions; backfilling of holes; furnishing and placing concrete for plugs; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Total payment of this Item will not exceed 10% of the original contract amount until final acceptance. The remainder will be paid on the estimate after the final acceptance under Article 5.12., "Final Acceptance."

Item 132

Embankment



1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, place, and compact materials for construction of roadways, embankments, levees, dikes, or any designated section of the roadway where additional material is required.

2. MATERIALS

Furnish approved material capable of forming a stable embankment from required excavation in the areas shown on the plans or from sources outside the right of way. Provide one or more of the following types as shown on the plans:

- **Type A.** Granular material that is free from vegetation or other objectionable material and meets the requirements of Table 1.

Table 1
Testing Requirements

Property	Test Method	Specification Limit
Liquid limit	Tex-104-E	≤ 45
Plasticity index (PI)	Tex-106-E	≤ 15
Bar linear shrinkage	Tex-107-E	≥ 2

Perform the Linear Shrinkage test only as indicated in Tex-104-E.

- **Type B.** Materials such as rock, loam, clay, or other approved materials.
- **Type C.** Material meeting the specification requirements shown on the plans. Type C may be further designated as Type C1, C2, etc.
- **Type D.** Material from required excavation areas shown on the plans.

Meet the requirements of the pertinent retaining wall Items for retaining wall backfill material.

3. CONSTRUCTION

Meet the requirements of Item 7, "Legal Relations and Responsibilities," when off right of way sources are used. Notify the Engineer before opening a material source to allow for required testing. Complete preparation of the right of way in accordance with Item 100, "Preparing Right of Way," for areas to receive embankment.

Backfill tree-stump holes or other minor excavations with approved material and tamp. Restore the ground surface, including any material disked loose or washed out, to its original slope. Compact the ground surface by sprinkling in accordance with Item 204, "Sprinkling," and by rolling using equipment complying with Item 210, "Rolling," when directed.

Scarify and loosen the unpaved surface areas, except rock, to a depth of at least 6 in. unless otherwise shown on the plans. Bench slopes before placing material. Begin placement of material at the toe of slopes. Do not place trees, stumps, roots, vegetation, or other objectionable material in the embankment. Simultaneously recompact scarified material with the placed embankment material. Do not exceed the layer depth specified in Section 132.3.4., "Compaction Methods."

Construct embankments to the grade and sections shown on the plans. Construct the embankment in layers approximately parallel to the finished grade for the full width of the individual roadway cross-sections unless

otherwise shown on the plans. Ensure that each section of the embankment conforms to the detailed sections or slopes. Maintain the finished section, density, and grade until the project is accepted.

- 3.1. **Earth Embankments.** Earth embankment is mainly composed of material other than rock. Construct embankments in successive layers, evenly distributing materials in lengths suited for sprinkling and rolling.
- Treat material in accordance with Item 260, "Lime Treatment (Road-Mixed)" or Item 275, "Cement Treatment (Road-Mixed)" when required. Obtain approval to incorporate rock and broken concrete produced by the construction project in the lower layers of the embankment. Place the rock and concrete outside the limits of the completed roadbed when the size of approved rock or broken concrete exceeds the layer thickness requirements in Section 132.3.4., "Compaction Methods." Cut and remove all exposed reinforcing steel from the broken concrete.
- Move the material dumped in piles or windrows by blading or by similar methods and incorporate it into uniform layers. Featheredge or mix abutting layers of dissimilar material for at least 100 ft. to ensure there are no abrupt changes in the material. Break down clods or lumps of material and mix embankment until a uniform material is attained.
- Apply water free of industrial wastes and other objectionable matter to achieve the uniform moisture content specified for compaction.
- Roll and sprinkle each embankment layer in accordance with Section 132.3.4.1., "Ordinary Compaction," when ordinary compaction is specified. Compact the layer to the required density in accordance with Section 132.3.4.2., "Density Control," when density control is specified.
- 3.2. **Rock Embankments.** Rock embankment is mainly composed of rock. Construct rock embankments in successive layers for the full width of the roadway cross-section with a depth of 18 in. or less. Increase the layer depth for large rock sizes as approved. Do not exceed a depth of 2-1/2 ft. in any case. Fill voids created by the large stone matrix with smaller stones during the placement and filling operations.
- Ensure the depth of the embankment layer is greater than the maximum dimension of any rock. Do not place rock greater than 2 ft. in its maximum dimension, unless otherwise approved. Construct the final layer with graded material so that the density and uniformity is in accordance with Section 132.3.4., "Compaction Methods." Break up exposed oversized material as approved.
- Roll and sprinkle each embankment layer in accordance with Section 132.3.4.1., "Ordinary Compaction," when ordinary compaction is specified. Compact each layer to the required density in accordance with Section 132.3.4.2., "Density Control," when density control is specified. Proof-roll each rock layer as directed, where density testing is not possible, in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," to ensure proper compaction.
- 3.3. **Embankments Adjacent to Culverts and Bridges.** Compact embankments adjacent to culverts and bridges in accordance with Item 400, "Excavation and Backfill for Structures."
- 3.4. **Compaction Methods.** Begin rolling longitudinally at the sides and proceed toward the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least 1/2 the width of the roller. Begin rolling at the lower side and progress toward the high side on super elevated curves. Alternate roller trips to attain slightly different lengths. Compact embankments in accordance with Section 132.4.1., "Ordinary Compaction," or Section 132.3.4.2., "Density Control," as shown on the plans.
- 3.4.1. **Ordinary Compaction.** Use approved rolling equipment complying with Item 210, "Rolling," to compact each layer. Use specific equipment when required by the plans or the Engineer. Do not allow the loose depth of any layer to exceed 8 in., unless otherwise approved. Bring each layer to the moisture content directed before and during rolling operations. Compact each layer until there is no evidence of further consolidation. Maintain a level layer to ensure uniform compaction. Recompact and refinish the subgrade at no additional expense to the Department if the required stability or finish is lost for any reason.

- 3.4.2. **Density Control.** Compact each layer to the required density using equipment complying with Item 210, "Rolling." Determine the maximum lift thickness based on the ability of the compacting operation and equipment to meet the required density. Do not exceed layer thickness of 16 in. loose or 12 in. compacted material unless otherwise approved. Maintain a level layer to ensure uniform compaction.

The Engineer will use Tex-114-E to determine the maximum dry density (D_a) and optimum moisture content (W_{opt}). Meet the requirements for field density and moisture content in Table 2 unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Table 2
Field Density Control Requirements

Description	Density	Moisture Content
	Tex-115-E	
$PI \leq 15$	$\geq 98\% D_a$	
$15 < PI \leq 35$	$\geq 98\% D_a$ and $\leq 102\% D_a$	$\geq W_{opt}$
$PI > 35$	$\geq 95\% D_a$ and $\leq 100\% D_a$	$\geq W_{opt}$

Each layer is subject to testing by the Engineer for density and moisture content. During compaction, the moisture content of the soil should not exceed the value shown on the moisture-density curve, above optimum, required to achieve:

- 98% dry density for soils with a PI greater than 15 but less than or equal to 35 or
- 95% dry density for soils with PI greater than 35.

Remove small areas of the layer to allow for density tests as required. Replace the removed material and recompact at no additional expense to the Department. Proof-roll in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," when shown on the plans or as directed. Correct soft spots as directed.

- 3.5. **Maintenance of Moisture and Reworking.** Maintain the density and moisture content once all requirements in Table 2 are met. Maintain the moisture content no lower than 4% below optimum for soils with a PI greater than 15. Rework the material to obtain the specified compaction when the material loses the required stability, density, moisture, or finish. Alter the compaction methods and procedures on subsequent work to obtain specified density as directed.
- 3.6. **Acceptance Criteria.**
- 3.6.1. **Grade Tolerances.**
- 3.6.1.1. **Staged Construction.** Grade to within 0.1 ft. in the cross-section and 0.1 ft. in 16 ft. measured longitudinally.
- 3.6.1.2. **Turnkey Construction.** Grade to within 1/2 in. in the cross-section and 1/2 in. in 16 ft. measured longitudinally.
- 3.6.2. **Gradation Tolerances.** Ensure no more than 1 of the 5 most recent gradation tests is outside the specified limits on any individual sieve by more than 5% when gradation requirements are shown on the plans.
- 3.6.3. **Density Tolerances.** Ensure no more than 1 of the 5 most recent density tests for compaction work is outside the specified density limits, and no test is outside the limits by more than 3 pcf.
- 3.6.4. **Plasticity Tolerances.** Ensure no more than 1 of the 5 most recent PI tests for material is outside the specified limit by more than 2 points.

4. MEASUREMENT

Embankment will be measured by the cubic yard. Measurement will be further defined for payment as follows:

- 4.1. **Final.** The cubic yard will be measured in its final position using the average end area method. The volume is computed between the original ground surface or the surface upon which the embankment is to be constructed and the lines, grades, and slopes of the embankment. In areas of salvaged topsoil, payment for embankment will be made in accordance with Item 160, "Topsoil." Shrinkage or swell factors will not be considered in determining the calculated quantities.
- 4.2. **Original.** The cubic yard will be measured in its original and natural position using the average end area method.
- 4.3. **Vehicle.** The cubic yard will be measured in vehicles at the point of delivery.

When measured by the cubic yard in its final position, this is a plans quantity measurement item. The quantity to be paid is the quantity shown in the proposal, unless modified by Article 9.2., "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

Shrinkage or swell factors are the Contractor's responsibility. When shown on the plans, factors are for informational purposes only.

Measurement of retaining wall backfill in embankment areas is paid for as embankment unless otherwise shown on the plans. Limits of measurement for embankment in retaining wall areas are shown on the plans.

5. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Embankment (Final)," "Embankment (Original)," or "Embankment (Vehicle)" of the compaction method and type specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing embankment; hauling; placing, compacting, finishing, and reworking; disposal of waste material; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

When proof rolling is directed, it will be paid for in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling."

All sprinkling and rolling, except proof rolling, will not be paid for directly but will be considered subsidiary to this Item, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Where subgrade is constructed under this Contract, correction of soft spots in the subgrade will be at the Contractor's expense. Where subgrade is not constructed under this Contract, correction of soft spots in the subgrade will be paid in accordance with Article 9.7., "Payment for Extra Work and Force Account Method."

Item 164

Seeding for Erosion Control



1. DESCRIPTION

Provide and install temporary or permanent seeding for erosion control as shown on the plans or as directed.

2. MATERIALS

- 2.1. **Seed.** Provide seed from the previous season's crop meeting the requirements of the Texas Seed Law, including the testing and labeling for pure live seed (PLS = Purity × Germination). Furnish seed of the designated species, in labeled unopened bags or containers to the Engineer before planting. Use within 12 mo. from the date of the analysis. When Buffalograss is specified, use seed that is treated with KNO₃ (potassium nitrate) to overcome dormancy.

Use Tables 1–4 to determine the appropriate seed mix and rates as specified on the plans. If a plant species is not available by the producers, the other plant species in the recommended seed mixture will be increased proportionally by the PLS/acre of the missing plant species.

Table 1
Permanent Rural Seed Mix

District and Planting Dates	Clay Soils		Sandy Soils	
	Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)		Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)	
1 (Paris) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.2	Bermudagrass	1.5
	Bermudagrass	1.8	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	6.0
	Little Bluestem (Native)	1.7	Sand Lovegrass	0.6
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Weeping Lovegrass (Ermelo)	0.8
			Partridge Pea	1.0
2 (Ft. Worth) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0
	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.3	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8
	Awnless Bushsunflower (Plateau)	0.2	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75
			Purple Prairie Clover	0.3
3 (Wichita Falls) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	0.6	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.4	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Western Wheatgrass (Barton)	1.2	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8
	Galleta Grass (Viva)	0.6	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75
	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.3
	Awnless Bushsunflower (Plateau)	0.2		
4 (Amarillo) Feb. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.6	Weeping Lovegrass (Ermelo)	0.8
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.2	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.0
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.3
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Sand Bluestem	1.8
			Purple Prairie Clover	0.5

Table 1 (continued)
Permanent Rural Seed Mix

District and Planting Dates	Clay Soils		Sandy Soils	
	Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)		Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)	
5 (Lubbock) Feb. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	3.6	Weeping Lovegrass (Ermelo)	0.8
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.2	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.0
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.3
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Sand Bluestem	1.8
			Purple Prairie Clover	0.5
6 (Odessa) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.4	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.4
	Galleta Grass (Viva)	0.6	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Alkali Sacaton (Saltalk)	0.2	Indian Ricegrass (Rim Rock)	1.6
	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2	Sand Bluestem (Cottle County)	1.2
	False Rhodes Grass (Kinney)	0.1	Little Bluestem (Pastura)	0.8
	Whiplash Pappusgrass (Webb)	0.6	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.3
	Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2		
7 (San Angelo) Feb. 1–May 1	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.4	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.4	Sand Bluestem (Cottle County)	1.2
	Western Wheatgrass (Barton)	1.2	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Galleta Grass (Viva)	0.6	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8
	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75
	Illinois Bundleflower (Sabine)	1.0	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.3
8 (Abilene) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.4	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.4	Sand Bluestem (Cottle County)	1.2
	Western Wheatgrass (Barton)	1.2	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Galleta Grass (Viva)	0.6	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8
	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75
	Illinois Bundleflower (Sabine)	1.0	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.3
9 (Waco) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0
	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.3	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8
	Awnless Bushsunflower (Plateau)	0.2	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75
			Purple Prairie Clover	0.3
10 (Tyler) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	1.8	Bermudagrass	1.8
	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	9.0	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	9.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	2.7	Weeping Lovegrass (Ermelo)	0.5
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Sand Lovegrass	0.5
		Lance-Leaf Coreopsis	1.0	
11 (Lufkin) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	1.8	Bermudagrass	2.1
	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	9.0	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	9.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	2.7	Sand Lovegrass	0.5
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Lance-Leaf Coreopsis	1.0

Table 1 (continued)
Permanent Rural Seed Mix

District and Planting Dates	Clay Soils		Sandy Soils	
	Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)		Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)	
12 (Houston) Jan. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.1	Bermudagrass	2.4
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.2	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	10.5
	Little Bluestem (Native)	1.4	Weeping Lovegrass (Ermelo)	1.0
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Lance-Leaf Coreopsis	1.0
13 (Yoakum) Jan. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.4
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.5	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0
	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.8
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.3	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Halls Panicum (Oso)	0.2	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.6
	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Canada Wildrye (Lavaca)	2.0	Englemann Daisy (Eldorado)	1.0
	Illinois Bundleflower (Sabine)	1.3		
	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.6		
14 (Austin) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0
	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Englemann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Illinois Bundleflower (Sabine)	1.3	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8
	Awnless Bushsunflower (Plateau)	0.2	Englemann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75
	Purple Prairie Clover		Purple Prairie Clover	0.3
15 (San Antonio) Feb. 1–May 1	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	1.0	Slender Grama (Dilley)	2.0
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.6
	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6
	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2
	Halls Panicum (Oso)	0.2	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.3
	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2	Multi-flowered False Rhodes Grass (Hidalgo)	0.1
	False Rhodes Grass (Kinney)	0.1	Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2
	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2		
	Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2		
16 (Corpus Christi) Jan. 1–May 1	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	1.0	Slender Grama (Dilley)	2.0
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.6
	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6
	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2
	Halls Panicum (Oso)	0.2	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.3
	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2	Multi-flowered False Rhodes Grass (Hidalgo)	0.1
	False Rhodes Grass (Kinney)	0.1	Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2
	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2		
	Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2		
17 (Bryan) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	1.5	Bermudagrass	1.5
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.6	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	7.5
	Little Bluestem (Native)	1.7	Weeping Lovegrass (Ermelo)	0.6
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Sand Lovegrass	0.6
			Lance-Leaf Coreopsis	1.0

Table 1 (continued)
Permanent Rural Seed Mix

District and Planting Dates	Clay Soils		Sandy Soils	
	Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)		Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)	
18 (Dallas) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0
	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.3	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8
	Awnless Bushsunflower (Plateau)	0.2	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75
		Purple Prairie Clover	0.3	
19 (Atlanta) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	2.1
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	7.5
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Sand Lovegrass	0.6
		Lance-Leaf Coreopsis	1.0	
20 (Beaumont) Jan. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.7	Bermudagrass	2.1
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.1	Bahiagrass (Pensacola)	7.5
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0	Sand Lovegrass	0.6
		Lance-Leaf Coreopsis	1.0	
21 (Pharr) Jan. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	1.0	Slender Grama (Dilley)	2.0
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.6
	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6
	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2
	Halls Panicum (Oso)	0.2	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.3
	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2	Multi-flowered False Rhoades Grass (Hidalgo)	0.1
	False Rhodes Grass (Kinney)	0.1	Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2
	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2		
Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2			
22 (Laredo) Jan. 15–May 1	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	1.0	Slender Grama (Dilley)	2.0
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.6
	Slender Grama (Dilley)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6
	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2
	Halls Panicum (Oso)	0.2	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.3
	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2	Multi-flowered False Rhoades Grass (Hidalgo)	0.1
	False Rhodes Grass (Kinney)	0.1	Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2
	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2		
Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2			
23 (Brownwood) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	0.6	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Texas Grama (Atascosa)	1.0	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2
	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.4	Partridge Pea (Comanche)	0.6
	Western Wheatgrass (Barton)	1.2	Little Bluestem (OK Select)	0.8
	Galleta Grass (Viva)	0.6	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75
	Engelmann Daisy (Eldorado)	0.75	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.3
Awnless Bushsunflower (Plateau)	0.2			

Permanent Rural Seed Mix

District and Planting Dates	Clay Soils		Sandy Soils	
	Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)		Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)	
24 (El Paso) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0	Green Sprangletop (Van Horn)	1.0
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	1.0	Hooded Windmillgrass (Mariah)	0.2
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.4	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.4
	Galleta Grass (Viva)	0.6	Hairy Grama (Chaparral)	0.4
	Shortspike Windmillgrass (Welder)	0.2	Sand Lovegrass (Mason)	0.2
	Pink Pappusgrass (Maverick)	0.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden County)	0.2
	Alkali Sacaton (Saltalk)	0.2	Indian Ricegrass (Rim Rock)	1.6
	Plains Bristlegrass (Catarina Blend)	0.2	Sand Bluestem (Cottle County)	1.2
	False Rhodes Grass (Kinney)	0.1	Little Bluestem (Pastura)	0.8
	Whiplash Pappusgrass (Webb)	0.6	Purple Prairie Clover (Cuero)	0.3
	Arizona Cottontop (La Salle)	0.2		
25 (Childress) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	2.7	Weeping Lovegrass (Ermelo)	1.2
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.9	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.5
	Western Wheatgrass	2.1	Sand Lovegrass	0.8
	Galleta	1.6	Purple Prairie Clover	0.5
	Illinois Bundleflower	1.0		

Table 2
Permanent Urban Seed Mix

District and Planting Dates	Clay Soils		Sandy Soils	
	Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)		Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)	
1 (Paris) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	5.4
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5		
2 (Ft. Worth) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	3.6	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	3.6
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	2.1
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.3
3 (Wichita Falls) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	4.5	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	3.6
	Bermudagrass	1.8	Bermudagrass	1.8
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
4 (Amarillo) Feb. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	3.6	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	2.7
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.2	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.9
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
			Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
5 (Lubbock) Feb. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	3.6	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	2.7
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.2	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.9
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
			Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
6 (Odessa) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.6	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	2.7
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.2	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.9
			Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
7 (San Angelo) Feb. 1–May 1	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	7.2	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.2
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.3
			Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.9
			Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
8 (Abilene) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.3
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.2	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.8
			Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6

Table 2 (continued)
Permanent Urban Seed Mix

District and Planting Dates	Clay Soils		Sandy Soils	
	Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)		Species and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)	
9 (Waco) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	1.8	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Bermudagrass	3.6
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
10 (Tyler) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	5.4
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5		
11 (Lufkin) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	5.4
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5		
12 (Houston) Jan. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5	Bermudagrass	5.4
	Bermudagrass	2.4		
13 (Yoakum) Jan. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	4.5	Bermudagrass	5.4
	Bermudagrass	2.4		
14 (Austin) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	4.8
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	3.6	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6		
15 (San Antonio) Feb. 1–May 1	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	3.6	Bermudagrass	4.8
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6		
16 (Corpus Christi) Jan. 1–May 1	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	3.6	Bermudagrass	4.8
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6		
17 (Bryan) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	5.4
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5		
18 (Dallas) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	3.6	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Bermudagrass	3.6
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
19 (Atlanta) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	5.4
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5		
20 (Beaumont) Jan. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Bermudagrass	5.4
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	4.5		
21 (Pharr) Jan. 15–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	3.6	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Bermudagrass	3.6
	Bermudagrass	2.4	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
22 (Laredo) Jan. 15–May 1	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	4.5	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Bermudagrass	3.6
	Bermudagrass	1.8	Sand Dropseed	0.4
23 (Brownwood) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (Haskell)	3.6	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Bermudagrass	1.2	Bermudagrass	3.6
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	0.9	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
24 (El Paso) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (South Texas)	3.6	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.2	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.8
25 (Childress) Feb. 1–May 15	Green Sprangletop	0.3	Green Sprangletop	0.3
	Sideoats Grama (El Reno)	3.6	Sand Dropseed (Borden Co.)	0.4
	Blue Grama (Hachita)	1.2	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6
	Buffalograss (Texoka)	1.6	Bermudagrass	1.8

Table 3
Temporary Cool Season Seeding

Districts	Dates	Seed Mix and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)
Paris (1), Amarillo (4), Lubbock (5), Dallas (18)	September 1–November 30	Tall Fescue 4.5 Western Wheatgrass 5.6 Wheat (Red, Winter) 34
Odessa (6), San Angelo (7), El Paso (24)	September 1–November 30	Western Wheatgrass 8.4 Wheat (Red, Winter) 50
Waco (9), Tyler (10), Lufkin (11), Austin (14), San Antonio (15), Bryan (17), Atlanta (19)	September 1–November 30	Tall Fescue 4.5 Oats 24 Wheat 34
Houston (12), Yoakum (13), Corpus Christi (16), Beaumont (20), Pharr (21), Laredo (22)	September 1–November 30	Oats 72
Ft. Worth (2), Wichita Falls (3), Abilene (8), Brownwood (23), Childress (25)	September 1–November 30	Tall Fescue 4.5 Western Wheatgrass 5.6 Cereal Rye 34

Table 4
Temporary Warm Season Seeding

Districts	Dates	Seed Mix and Rates (lb. PLS/acre)
All	May 1–August 31	Foxtail Millet 34

- 2.2. **Fertilizer.** Use fertilizer in conformance with Article 166.2., “Materials.”
- 2.3. **Vegetative Watering.** Use water that is clean and free of industrial wastes and other substances harmful to the growth of vegetation.
- 2.4. **Mulch.**
- 2.4.1. **Straw or Hay Mulch.** Use straw or hay mulch in conformance with Section 162.2.5., “Mulch.”
- Cellulose Fiber Mulch.** Use only cellulose fiber mulches that are on the Approved Products List, *Erosion Control Approved Products*. (<http://www.txdot.gov/business/resources/erosion-control.html>) Submit one full set of manufacturer’s literature for the selected material. Keep mulch dry until applied. Do not use molded or rotted material.
- 2.5. **Tacking Methods.** Use a tacking agent applied in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations or a crimping method on all straw or hay mulch operations. Use tacking agents as approved or as specified on the plans.

3. CONSTRUCTION

Cultivate the area to a depth of 4 in. before placing the seed unless otherwise directed. Use approved equipment to vertically track the seedbed as shown on the plans or as directed. Cultivate the seedbed to a depth of 4 in. or mow the area before placement of the permanent seed when performing permanent seeding after an established temporary seeding. Plant the seed specified and mulch, if required, after the area has been completed to lines and grades as shown on the plans.

- 3.1. **Broadcast Seeding.** Distribute the seed or seed mixture uniformly over the areas shown on the plans using hand or mechanical distribution or hydro-seeding on top of the soil unless otherwise directed. Apply the mixture to the area to be seeded within 30 min. of placement of components in the equipment when seed and water are to be distributed as a slurry during hydro-seeding. Roll the planted area with a light roller or other suitable equipment. Roll sloped areas along the contour of the slopes.
- 3.2. **Straw or Hay Mulch Seeding.** Plant seed according to Section 164.3.1., “Broadcast Seeding.” Apply straw or hay mulch uniformly over the seeded area immediately after planting the seed or seed mixture. Apply

straw mulch at 2 to 2.5 tons per acre. Apply hay mulch at 1.5 to 2 tons per acre. Use a tacking method over the mulched area.

- 3.3. **Cellulose Fiber Mulch Seeding.** Plant seed in accordance with Section 164.3.1., "Broadcast Seeding." Apply cellulose fiber mulch uniformly over the seeded area immediately after planting the seed or seed mixture at the following rates.

- Sandy soils with slopes of 3:1 or less—2,500 lb. per acre.
- Sandy soils with slopes greater than 3:1—3,000 lb. per acre.
- Clay soils with slopes of 3:1 or less—2,000 lb. per acre.
- Clay soils with slopes greater than 3:1—2,300 lb. per acre.

Cellulose fiber mulch rates are based on dry weight of mulch per acre. Mix cellulose fiber mulch and water to make a slurry and apply uniformly over the seeded area using suitable equipment.

- 3.4. **Drill Seeding.** Plant seed or seed mixture uniformly over the area shown on the plans at a depth of 1/4 to 1/3 in. using a pasture or rangeland type drill unless otherwise directed. Plant seed along the contour of the slopes.

- 3.5. **Straw or Hay Mulching.** Apply straw or hay mulch uniformly over the area as shown on the plans. Apply straw mulch at 2 to 2.5 tons per acre. Apply hay mulch at 1.5 to 2 tons per acre. Use a tacking method over the mulched area.

Apply fertilizer in conformance with Article 166.3., "Construction." Seed and fertilizer may be distributed simultaneously during "Broadcast Seeding" operations, provided each component is applied at the specified rate. Apply half of the required fertilizer during the temporary seeding operation and the other half during the permanent seeding operation when temporary and permanent seeding are both specified for the same area.

Water the seeded areas at the rates and frequencies as shown on the plans or as directed.

4. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by the square yard or by the acre.

5. PAYMENT

The work performed and the materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Broadcast Seeding (Perm)" of the rural or urban seed mixture and sandy or clay soil specified, "Broadcast Seeding (Temp)" of warm or cool season specified, "Straw or Hay Mulch Seeding (Perm)" of the rural or urban seed mixture and sandy or clay soil specified, "Straw or Hay Mulch Seeding (Temp)" of warm or cool season specified, "Cellulose Fiber Mulch Seeding (Perm)" of the rural or urban seed mixture and sandy or clay soil specified, "Cellulose Fiber Mulch Seeding (Temp)" of warm or cool season specified, "Drill Seeding (Perm)" of the rural or urban seed mixture and sandy or clay soil specified, "Drill Seeding (Temp)" of warm or cool season specified, and "Straw or Hay Mulching." This price is full compensation for furnishing materials, including water for hydro-seeding and hydro-mulching operations, mowing, labor, equipment, tools, supplies, and incidentals. Fertilizer will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to this Item. Water for irrigating the seeded area, when specified, will be paid for under Item 168, "Vegetative Watering."

Item 216

Proof Rolling



1. DESCRIPTION

Proof-roll earthwork, base, or both to locate unstable areas.

2. EQUIPMENT

- 2.1. **Specified Equipment.** Furnish rollers that weigh at least 25 tons when loaded. The maximum acceptable load is 50 tons. Provide rollers that meet the requirements of Section 210.2.4., "Pneumatic Tire Rollers."
- 2.2. **Alternative Equipment.** The Contractor may use alternate compaction equipment that produces results equivalent to the specified equipment in the same period of time as approved. Discontinue the use of the alternative equipment and furnish the specified equipment if the desired results are not achieved.

3. CONSTRUCTION

Perform proof rolling as directed. Adjust the load and tire inflation pressures within the range of the manufacturer's charts or tabulations, as directed. Make at least 2 coverages with the proof roller. Offset each trip of the roller by at most one tire width. Operate rollers at a speed between 2 and 6 mph, as directed. Correct unstable or nonuniform areas, if found, in accordance with the applicable Item.

4. MEASUREMENT

Rolling will be measured by the hour operated on surfaces being tested.

5. PAYMENT

The work performed and equipment furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Proof Rolling." This price is full compensation for furnishing and operating equipment and for labor, materials, tools, and incidentals.

Item 247

Flexible Base



1. DESCRIPTION

Construct a foundation course composed of flexible base.

2. MATERIALS

Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications. Notify the Engineer of the proposed material sources and of changes to material sources. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time before compaction throughout the duration of the project to assure specification compliance. Use Tex-100-E material definitions.

- 2.1. **Aggregate.** Furnish aggregate of the type and grade shown on the plans and meeting the requirements of Table 1. Each source must meet Table 1 requirements for liquid limit, plasticity index, and wet ball mill for the grade specified. Do not use additives, such as but not limited to lime, cement, or fly ash to modify aggregates to meet the requirements of Table 1 unless shown on the plans.

Table 1
Material Requirements

Property	Test Method	Grade 1-2	Grade 3	Grade 4 ²	Grade 5
Master gradation sieve size (cumulative % retained)	Tex-110-E			As shown on the plans	
2-1/2"		0	0		0
1-3/4"		0-10	0-10		0-5
7/8"		10-35	-		10-35
3/8"		30-65	-		35-65
#4		45-75	45-75		45-75
#40	65-90	50-85	70-90		
Liquid Limit, % Max	Tex-104-E	40	40	As shown on the plans	35
Plasticity Index, Max ¹	Tex-106-E	10	12	As shown on the plans	10
Plasticity index, Min ¹		As shown on the plans			
Wet ball mill, % Max	Tex-116-E	40	-	As shown on the plans	40
Wet ball mill, % Max increase passing the #40 sieve		20	-	As shown on the plans	20
Min compressive strength, psi	Tex-117-E			As shown on the plans	
lateral pressure 0 psi		35	-		-
lateral pressure 3 psi		-	-		90
lateral pressure 15 psi		175	-		175

- Determine plastic index in accordance with Tex-107-E (linear shrinkage) when liquid limit is unattainable as defined in Tex-104-E.
- Grade 4 may be further designated as Grade 4A, Grade 4B, etc.

- 2.1.1. **Material Tolerances.** The Engineer may accept material if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent gradation tests has an individual sieve outside the specified limits of the gradation.

When target grading is required by the plans, no single failing test may exceed the master grading by more than 5 percentage points on sieves No. 4 and larger or 3 percentage points on sieves smaller than No. 4.

The Engineer may accept material if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent plasticity index tests is outside the specified limit. No single failing test may exceed the allowable limit by more than 2 points.

- 2.1.2. **Material Types.** Do not use fillers or binders unless approved. Furnish the type specified on the plans in accordance with the following:
- 2.1.2.1. **Type A.** Crushed stone produced and graded from oversize quarried aggregate that originates from a single, naturally occurring source. Do not use gravel or multiple sources.
- 2.1.2.2. **Type B.** Crushed or uncrushed gravel. Blending of 2 or more sources is allowed.
- 2.1.2.3. **Type C.** Crushed gravel with a minimum of 60% of the particles retained on a No. 4 sieve with 2 or more crushed faces as determined by Tex-460-A, Part I. Blending of 2 or more sources is allowed.
- 2.1.2.4. **Type D.** Type A material or crushed concrete. Crushed concrete containing gravel will be considered Type D material. Crushed concrete must meet the requirements in Section 247.2.1.3.2., "Recycled Material (Including Crushed Concrete) Requirements," and be managed in a way to provide for uniform quality. The Engineer may require separate dedicated stockpiles in order to verify compliance.
- 2.1.2.5. **Type E.** Caliche, iron ore or as otherwise shown on the plans.
- 2.1.3. **Recycled Material.** Recycled asphalt pavement (RAP) and other recycled materials may be used when shown on the plans. Request approval to blend 2 or more sources of recycled materials.
- 2.1.3.1. **Limits on Percentage.** Do not exceed 20% RAP by weight, when RAP is allowed, unless otherwise shown on the plans. The percentage limitations for other recycled materials will be as shown on the plans.
- 2.1.3.2. **Recycled Material (Including Crushed Concrete) Requirements.**
- 2.1.3.2.1. **Contractor-Furnished Recycled Materials.** Provide recycled materials that have a maximum sulfate content of 3,000 ppm when tested in accordance with Tex-145-E. When the Contractor furnishes the recycled materials, including crushed concrete, the final product will be subject to the requirements of Table 1 for the grade specified. Certify compliance with DMS-11000, "Evaluating and Using Nonhazardous Recyclable Materials Guidelines," for Contractor furnished recycled materials. In addition, recycled materials must be free from reinforcing steel and other objectionable material and have at most 1.5% deleterious material when tested in accordance with Tex-413-A. For RAP, do not exceed a maximum percent loss from decantation of 5.0% when tested in accordance with Tex-406-A. Test RAP without removing the asphalt.
- 2.1.3.2.2. **Department-Furnished Required Recycled Materials.** When the Department furnishes and requires the use of recycled materials, unless otherwise shown on the plans:
- Department-required recycled material will not be subject to the requirements in Table 1,
 - Contractor-furnished materials are subject to the requirements in Table 1 and this Item,
 - the final product, blended, will be subject to the requirements in Table 1, and
 - for final product, unblended (100% Department-furnished required recycled material), the liquid limit, plasticity index, wet ball mill, and compressive strength is waived.
- Crush Department-furnished RAP so that 100% passes the 2 in. sieve. The Contractor is responsible for uniformly blending to meet the percentage required.
- 2.1.3.2.3. **Department-Furnished and Allowed Recycled Materials.** When the Department furnishes and allows the use of recycled materials or allows the Contractor to furnish recycled materials, the final blended product is subject to the requirements of Table 1 and the plans.
- 2.1.3.3. **Recycled Material Sources.** Department-owned recycled material is available to the Contractor only when shown on the plans. Return unused Department-owned recycled materials to the Department stockpile location designated by the Engineer unless otherwise shown on the plans.

The use of Contractor-owned recycled materials is allowed when shown on the plans. Contractor-owned surplus recycled materials remain the property of the Contractor. Remove Contractor-owned recycled materials from the project and dispose of them in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations before project acceptance. Do not intermingle Contractor-owned recycled material with Department-owned recycled material unless approved.

- 2.2. **Water.** Furnish water free of industrial wastes and other objectionable matter.
- 2.3. **Material Sources.** Expose the vertical faces of all strata of material proposed for use when non-commercial sources are used. Secure and process the material by successive vertical cuts extending through all exposed strata, when directed.

3. EQUIPMENT

Provide machinery, tools, and equipment necessary for proper execution of the work.

- 3.1. Provide rollers in accordance with Item 210, "Rolling." Provide proof rollers in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," when required.
- 3.2. When ride quality measurement is required, provide a high speed or lightweight inertial profiler certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute. Provide equipment certification documentation. Display a current decal on the equipment indicating the certification expiration date.

4. CONSTRUCTION

Construct each layer uniformly, free of loose or segregated areas, and with the required density and moisture content. Provide a smooth surface that conforms to the typical sections, lines, and grades shown on the plans or as directed.

Stockpile base material temporarily at an approved location before delivery to the roadway. Build stockpiles in layers no greater than 2 ft. thick. Stockpiles must have a total height between 10 and 16 ft. unless otherwise shown on the plans. After construction and acceptance of the stockpile, loading from the stockpile for delivery is allowed. Load by making successive vertical cuts through the entire depth of the stockpile.

Do not add or remove material from temporary stockpiles that require sampling and testing before delivery unless otherwise approved. Charges for additional sampling and testing required as a result of adding or removing material will be deducted from the Contractor's estimates.

Haul approved flexible base in clean trucks. Deliver the required quantity to each 100-ft. station or designated stockpile site as shown on the plans. Prepare stockpile sites as directed. When delivery is to the 100-ft. station, manipulate in accordance with the applicable Items.

- 4.1. **Preparation of Subgrade or Existing Base.** Remove or scarify existing asphalt concrete pavement in accordance with Item 105, "Removing Treated and Untreated Base and Asphalt Pavement," when shown on the plans or as directed. Shape the subgrade or existing base to conform to the typical sections shown on the plans or as directed.

When new base is required to be mixed with existing base, deliver, place, and spread the new flexible base in the required amount per station. Manipulate and thoroughly mix the new base with existing material to provide a uniform mixture to the specified depth before shaping.

Proof roll the roadbed in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," before pulverizing or scarifying when shown on the plans or directed. Correct soft spots as directed.

- 4.2. **Placing.** Spread and shape flexible base into a uniform layer with an approved spreader the same day as delivered unless otherwise approved. Construct layers to the thickness shown on the plans. Maintain the

shape of the course. Control dust by sprinkling, as directed. Correct or replace segregated areas as directed, at no additional expense to the Department.

Place successive base courses and finish courses using the same construction methods required for the first course.

- 4.3. **Compaction.** Compact using density control unless otherwise shown on the plans. Multiple lifts are permitted when shown on the plans or approved. Bring each layer to the moisture content directed. When necessary, sprinkle the material in accordance with Item 204, "Sprinkling."

Begin rolling longitudinally at the sides and proceed towards the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least 1/2 the width of the roller unit. Begin rolling at the low side and progress toward the high side on superelevated curves. Offset alternate trips of the roller. Operate rollers at a speed between 2 and 6 mph as directed.

Rework, recompact, and refinish material that fails to meet or that loses required moisture, density, stability, or finish requirements before the next course is placed or the project is accepted. Continue work until specification requirements are met. Perform the work at no additional expense to the Department.

Before final acceptance, the Engineer will select the locations of tests and measure the flexible base depth in accordance with Tex-140-E. Correct areas deficient by more than 1/2 in. in thickness by scarifying, adding material as required, reshaping, recompacting, and refinishing at the Contractor's expense.

- 4.3.1. **Ordinary Compaction.** Roll with approved compaction equipment as directed. Correct irregularities, depressions, and weak spots immediately by scarifying the areas affected, adding or removing approved material as required, reshaping, and recompacting.

- 4.3.2. **Density Control.** Compact to at least 100% of the maximum dry density determined by Tex-113-E, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Maintain moisture during compaction within ± 2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by Tex-113-E. Measure the moisture content of the material in accordance with Tex-115-E or Tex-103-E during compaction daily and report the results the same day to the Engineer, unless otherwise shown on the plans or directed. Do not achieve density by drying the material after compaction.

The Engineer will determine roadway density and moisture content of completed sections in accordance with Tex-115-E. The Engineer may accept the section if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent density tests is below the specified density and the failing test is no more than 3 pcf below the specified density.

- 4.4. **Finishing.** After completing compaction, clip, skin, or tight-blade the surface with a maintainer or subgrade trimmer to a depth of approximately 1/4 in. Remove loosened material and dispose of it at an approved location. Seal the clipped surface immediately by rolling with a pneumatic tire roller until a smooth surface is attained. Add small increments of water as needed during rolling. Shape and maintain the course and surface in conformity with the typical sections, lines, and grades as shown on the plans or as directed.

Correct grade deviations greater than 1/4 in. in 16 feet measured longitudinally or greater than 1/4 in. over the entire width of the cross-section in areas where surfacing is to be placed. Correct by loosening and adding, or removing material. Reshape and re-compact in accordance with Section 247.4.3., "Compaction."

- 4.5. **Curing.** Cure the finished section until the moisture content is at least 2 percentage points below optimum or as directed before applying the next successive course or prime coat.

- 4.6. **Ride Quality.** This section applies to the final travel lanes that receive a 1 or 2 course surface treatment for the final surface, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Measure ride quality of the base course after placement of the prime coat and before placement of the surface treatment, unless otherwise approved. Use a certified profiler operator from the Department's MPL. When requested, furnish the Engineer documentation for the person certified to operate the profiler.

Provide all profile measurements to the Engineer in electronic data files within 3 days after placement of the prime coat using the format specified in Tex-1001-S. The Engineer will use Department software to evaluate longitudinal profiles to determine areas requiring corrective action. Correct 0.1-mi.sections having an average international roughness index (IRI) value greater than 100.0 in. per mile to an IRI value of 100.0 in. per mile or less for each wheelpath, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Re-profile and correct sections that fail to maintain ride quality until placement of the next course, as directed. Correct re-profiled sections until specification requirements are met, as approved. Perform this work at no additional expense to the Department.

5. MEASUREMENT

Flexible base will be measured as follows:

- **Flexible Base (Complete In Place).** The ton, square yard, or any cubic yard method.
- **Flexible Base (Roadway Delivery).** The ton or any cubic yard method.
- **Flexible Base (Stockpile Delivery).** The ton, cubic yard in vehicle, or cubic yard in stockpile.

Measurement by the cubic yard in final position and square yard is a plans quantity measurement. The quantity to be paid for is the quantity shown in the proposal unless modified by Article 9.2., "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

Measurement is further defined for payment as follows.

- 5.1. **Cubic Yard in Vehicle.** By the cubic yard in vehicles of uniform capacity at the point of delivery.
- 5.2. **Cubic Yard in Stockpile.** By the cubic yard in the final stockpile position by the method of average end areas.
- 5.3. **Cubic Yard in Final Position.** By the cubic yard in the completed and accepted final position. The volume of base course is computed in place by the method of average end areas between the original subgrade or existing base surfaces and the lines, grades, and slopes of the accepted base course as shown on the plans.
- 5.4. **Square Yard.** By the square yard of surface area in the completed and accepted final position. The surface area of the base course is based on the width of flexible base as shown on the plans.
- 5.5. **Ton.** By the ton of dry weight in vehicles as delivered. The dry weight is determined by deducting the weight of the moisture in the material at the time of weighing from the gross weight of the material. The Engineer will determine the moisture content in the material in accordance with Tex-103-E from samples taken at the time of weighing.

When material is measured in trucks, the weight of the material will be determined on certified scales, or the Contractor must provide a set of standard platform truck scales at a location approved by the Engineer. Scales must conform to the requirements of Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment."

6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for the types of work shown below. No additional payment will be made for thickness or width exceeding that shown on the typical section or provided on the plans for cubic yard in the final position or square yard measurement.

Sprinkling and rolling, except proof rolling, will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to this Item unless otherwise shown on the plans. When proof rolling is shown on the plans or directed, it will be paid for in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling."

Where subgrade is constructed under this Contract, correction of soft spots in the subgrade will be at the Contractor's expense. Where subgrade is not constructed under this Contract, correction of soft spots in the subgrade will be paid in accordance with pertinent Items or Article 4.4., "Changes in the Work."

- 6.1. **Flexible Base (Complete In Place).** Payment will be made for the type and grade specified. For cubic yard measurement, "In Vehicle," "In Stockpile," or "In Final Position" will be specified. For square yard measurement, a depth will be specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing materials, temporary stockpiling, assistance provided in stockpile sampling and operations to level stockpiles for measurement, loading, hauling, delivery of materials, spreading, blading, mixing, shaping, placing, compacting, reworking, finishing, correcting locations where thickness is deficient, curing, furnishing scales and labor for weighing and measuring, and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 6.2. **Flexible Base (Roadway Delivery).** Payment will be made for the type and grade specified. For cubic yard measurement, "In Vehicle," "In Stockpile," or "In Final Position" will be specified. The unit price bid will not include processing at the roadway. This price is full compensation for furnishing materials, temporary stockpiling, assistance provided in stockpile sampling and operations to level stockpiles for measurement, loading, hauling, delivery of materials, furnishing scales and labor for weighing and measuring, and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 6.3. **Flexible Base (Stockpile Delivery).** Payment will be made for the type and grade specified. For cubic yard measurement, "In Vehicle" or "In Stockpile" will be specified. The unit price bid will not include processing at the roadway. This price is full compensation for furnishing and disposing of materials, preparing the stockpile area, temporary or permanent stockpiling, assistance provided in stockpile sampling and operations to level stockpiles for measurement, loading, hauling, delivery of materials to the stockpile, furnishing scales and labor for weighing and measuring, and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Item 300

Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions



1. DESCRIPTION

Provide asphalt cements, cutback and emulsified asphalts, performance-graded asphalt binders, and other miscellaneous asphalt materials as specified on the plans.

2. MATERIALS

Provide asphalt materials that meet the stated requirements when tested in accordance with the referenced Department, AASHTO, and ASTM test methods. Provide asphalt materials that have been preapproved for use by the Construction Division in accordance with Tex-545-C, "Asphalt Binder Quality Program," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Acronyms used in this Item are defined in Table 1.

Table 1
Acronyms

Acronym	Definition
Test Procedure Designations	
Tex T or R D	Department AASHTO ASTM
Polymer Modifier Designations	
P SBR or L SBS TR	polymer-modified styrene-butadiene rubber (latex) styrene-butadiene-styrene block co-polymer tire rubber (from ambient temperature grinding of truck and passenger tires)
AC	asphalt cement
AE	asphalt emulsion
AE-P	asphalt emulsion prime
A-R	asphalt-rubber
C	cationic
EAP&T	emulsified asphalt prime and tack
H-suffix	harder residue (lower penetration)
HF	high float
MC	medium-curing
MS	medium-setting
PCE	prime, cure, and erosion control
PG	performance grade
RC	rapid-curing
RS	rapid-setting
S-suffix	stockpile usage
SCM	special cutback material
SS	slow-setting

- 2.1. **Asphalt Cement.** Provide asphalt cement that is homogeneous, water-free, and nonfoaming when heated to 347°F, and meets the requirements in Table 2.

Table 2
Asphalt Cement

Property	Test Procedure	Viscosity Grade									
		AC-0.6		AC-1.5		AC-3		AC-5		AC-10	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity 140°F, poise 275°F, poise	T 202	40 0.4	80 -	100 0.7	200 -	250 1.1	350 -	400 1.4	600 -	800 1.9	1,200 -
Penetration, 77°F, 100g, 5 sec.	T 49	350	-	250	-	210	-	135	-	85	-
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	425	-	425	-	425	-	425	-	450	-
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	-	99.0	-	99.0	-	99.0	-	99.0	-
Spot test	Tex-509-C	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	
Tests on residue from Thin-Film Oven Test: Viscosity, 140°F, poise Ductility, ¹ 77°F 5 cm/min., cm	T 179 T 202 T 51	- 100	180 -	- 100	450 -	- 100	900 -	- 100	1,500 -	- 100	3,000 -

1. If AC-0.6 or AC-1.5 ductility at 77°F is less than 100 cm, material is acceptable if ductility at 60°F is more than 100 cm.

- 2.2. **Polymer-Modified Asphalt Cement.** Provide polymer-modified asphalt cement that is smooth, homogeneous, and meets the requirements of Table 3. Supply samples of the base asphalt cement and polymer additives if requested.

Table 3
Polymer-Modified Asphalt Cement

Property	Test Procedure	Polymer-Modified Viscosity Grade											
		AC-5 w/2% SBR		AC-10 w/2% SBR		AC-15P		AC-20XP		AC-10-2TR		AC-20-5TR	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Polymer		SBR		SBR		SBS		SBS		TR		TR	
Polymer content, % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	2.0	-	2.0	-	3.0	-	-	-	2.0	-	5.0	-
Dynamic shear, G*/sin δ, 64°C, 10 rad/s, kPa	T 315	-	-	-	-	-	-	1.0	-	-	-	1.0	-
Dynamic shear, G*/sin δ, 58°C, 10 rad/s, kPa	T 315	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1.0	-	-	-
Viscosity 140°F, poise 275°F, poise	T 202 T 202	700 -	- 7.0	1,300 -	- 8.0	1,500 -	- 8.0	2,000 -	- -	1,000 -	- 8.0	2,000 -	- 10.0
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	120	-	80	-	100	150	75	115	95	130	75	115
Ductility, 5cm/min., 39.2°F, cm	T 51	70	-	60	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Elastic recovery, 50°F, %	Tex-539-C	-	-	-	-	55	-	55	-	30	-	55	-
Softening point, °F	T 53	-	-	-	-	-	-	120	-	110	-	120	-
Polymer separation, 48 hr.	Tex-540-C	None		None		None		None		None		None	
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	425	-	425	-	425	-	425	-	425	-	425	-
Tests on residue from RTFOT aging and pressure aging: Creep stiffness S, -18°C, MPa m-value, -18°C	Tex-541-C and R 28 T 313	-	-	-	-	-	300	-	300	-	300	-	300
		-	-	-	-	0.300	-	0.300	-	0.300	-	0.300	-

- 2.3. **Cutback Asphalt.** Provide cutback asphalt that meets the requirements of Tables 4, 5, and 6 for the specified type and grade. Supply samples of the base asphalt cement and polymer additives if requested.

Table 4
Rapid-Curing Cutback Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade					
		RC-250		RC-800		RC-3000	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	250	400	800	1,600	3,000	6,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	80	–	80	–	80	–
Distillation test:	T 78						
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F							
to 437°F		40	75	35	70	20	55
to 500°F		65	90	55	85	45	75
to 600°F		85	–	80	–	70	–
Residue from distillation, volume %		70	–	75	–	82	–
Tests on distillation residue:							
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	60	240	60	240	60	240
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 77°F, cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	100	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–
Spot test	Tex-509-C	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	

Table 5
Medium-Curing Cutback Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade							
		MC-30		MC-250		MC-800		MC-3000	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	30	60	250	500	800	1,600	3,000	6,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	95	–	122	–	140	–	149	–
Distillation test:	T 78								
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F									
to 437°F		–	35	–	20	–	–	–	–
to 500°F		30	75	5	55	–	40	–	15
to 600°F		75	95	60	90	45	85	15	75
Residue from distillation, volume %		50	–	67	–	75	–	80	–
Tests on distillation residue:									
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	30	120	30	120	30	120	30	120
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 77°F, cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	100	–	100	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–
Spot test	Tex-509-C	Neg.		Neg.		Neg.		Neg.	

Table 6
Special-Use Cutback Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade					
		MC-2400L		SCM I		SCM II	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	2,400	4,800	500	1,000	1,000	2,000
Water, %	D95	–	0.2	–	0.2	–	0.2
Flash point, T.O.C., °F	T 79	150	–	175	–	175	–
Distillation test:	T 78						
Distillate, percentage by volume of total distillate to 680°F							
to 437°F		–	–	–	–	–	–
to 500°F		–	35	–	0.5	–	0.5
to 600°F		35	80	20	60	15	50
Residue from distillation, volume %		78	–	76	–	82	–
Tests on distillation residue:							
Polymer		SBR		–		–	
Polymer content, % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	2.0	–	–	–	–	–
Penetration, 100 g, 5 sec., 77°F	T 49	150	300	180	–	180	–
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 39.2°F, cm	T 51	50	–	–	–	–	–
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	99.0	–	99.0	–	99.0	–

- 2.4. **Emulsified Asphalt.** Provide emulsified asphalt that is homogeneous, does not separate after thorough mixing, and meets the requirements for the specified type and grade in Tables 7, 8, 9, and 10.

Table 7
Emulsified Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade									
		Rapid-Setting		Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting			
		HFRS-2		MS-2		AES-300		SS-1		SS-1H	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T 72										
77°F, sec.		–	–	–	–	75	400	20	100	20	100
122°F, sec.		150	400	100	300	–	–	–	–	–	–
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1
Miscibility	T 59	–		–		–		Pass		Pass	
Cement mixing, %	T 59	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	2.0	–	2.0
Coating ability and water resistance:	T 59										
Dry aggregate/after spray		–	–	–	–	Good/Fair	–	–	–	–	–
Wet aggregate/after spray		–	–	–	–	Fair/Fair	–	–	–	–	–
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.02 N CaCl ₂ , %	T 59	50	–	–	30	–	–	–	–	–	–
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1	–	1
Freezing test, 3 cycles ¹	T 59	–		Pass		–		Pass		Pass	
Distillation test:	T 59										
Residue by distillation, % by wt.		65	–	65	–	65	–	60	–	60	–
Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion		–	0.5	–	0.5	–	5	–	0.5	–	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation:											
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	100	140	120	160	300	–	120	160	70	100
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.5	–	97.5	–	97.5	–	97.5	–	97.5	–
Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	–	100	–	–	–	100	–	80	–
Float test, 140°F, sec.	T 50	1,200	–	–	–	1,200	–	–	–	–	–

1. Applies only when the Engineer designates material for winter use.

Table 8
Cationic Emulsified Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade											
		Rapid-Setting				Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting			
		CRS-2		CRS-2H		CMS-2		CMS-2S		CSS-1		CSS-1H	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	20	100	20	100
		150	400	150	400	100	300	100	300	-	-	-	-
Sieve test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Cement mixing, %	T 59	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	2.0
Coating ability and water resistance: Dry aggregate/after spray Wet aggregate/after spray	T 59	-	-	-	-	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	-	-	-	-
		-	-	-	-	Fair/Fair	Fair/Fair	Fair/Fair	Fair/Fair	-	-	-	-
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.8% Sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	70	-	70	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1
Particle charge	T 59	Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive	
Distillation test: Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion	T 59	65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	60	-	60	-
		-	0.5	-	0.5	-	7	-	5	-	0.5	-	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation: Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec. Solubility in trichloroethylene, % Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 49	120	160	70	110	120	200	300	-	120	160	70	110
	T 44	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-
	T 51	100	-	80	-	100	-	-	-	100	-	80	-

Table 9
Polymer-Modified Emulsified Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade											
		Rapid-Setting				Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting			
		RS-1P		HFRS-2P		AES-150P		AES-300P		AES-300S		SS-1P	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	-	-	-	-	75	400	75	400	75	400	30	100
		50	200	150	400	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sieve test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Miscibility	T 59	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Pass
Coating ability and water resistance: Dry aggregate/after spray Wet aggregate/after spray	T 59	-	-	-	-	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	Good/Fair	-	-
		-	-	-	-	Fair/Fair	Fair/Fair	Fair/Fair	Fair/Fair	Fair/Fair	Fair/Fair	-	-
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.02 N CaCl ₂ , %	T 59	60	-	50	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1
Breaking index, g	Tex-542-C	-	80	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Distillation test: ¹ Residue by distillation, % by wt. Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion	T 59	65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	60	-
		-	3	-	0.5	-	3	-	5	-	7	-	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation: Polymer content, wt. % (solids basis) Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec. Solubility in trichloroethylene, % Viscosity, 140°F, poise Float test, 140°F, sec. Ductility, ² 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm Elastic recovery, ² 50°F, %	Tex-533-C	-	-	3.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3.0	-
	T 49	225	300	90	140	150	300	300	-	300	-	100	140
	T 44	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-
	T 202	-	-	1,500	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,300	-
	T 50	-	-	1,200	-	1,200	-	1,200	-	1,200	-	-	-
	T 51	-	-	50	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	50	-
	Tex-539-C	55	-	55	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Tests on RTFO curing of distillation residue Elastic recovery, 50°F, %	Tex-541-C	-	-	-	-	50	-	50	-	30	-	-	-
	Tex-539-C	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

- Exception to T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350°F ±10°F. Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 min. (±5 min.) from the first application of heat.
- HFRS-2P must meet one of either the ductility or elastic recovery requirements.

Table 10
Polymer-Modified Cationic Emulsified Asphalt

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade											
		Rapid-Setting						Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting	
		CRS-1P		CRS-2P		CHFRS-2P		CMS-1P ³		CMS-2P ³		CSS-1P	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	-	-	-	-	-	-	20	100	-	-	20	100
		50	150	150	400	100	400	-	-	50	400	-	-
Sieve test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.8% Sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	60	-	70	-	60	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	1
Breaking index, g	Tex-542-C	-	80	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Particle charge	T 59	Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive	
Distillation test: ¹ Residue by distillation, % by weight Oil distillate, % by volume of emulsion	T 59	65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	62	-
		-	3	-	0.5	-	0.5	-	0.5	-	0.5	-	0.5
Tests on residue from distillation: Polymer content, wt. % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	-	-	3.0	-	3.0	-	-	-	-	-	3.0	-
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	225	300	90	150	80	130	40	-	40	-	55	90
Viscosity, 140°F, poise	T 202	-	-	1,300	-	1,300	-	-	5,000	-	5,000	-	-
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.0	-	97.0	-	95.0	-	-	-	-	-	97.0	-
Softening point, °F	T 53	-	-	-	-	130	-	-	-	-	-	135	-
Ductility, 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	70	-
Float test, 140°F, sec.	T 50	-	-	-	-	1,800	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ductility, ² 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	-	-	50	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Elastic recovery, ² 50°F, %	Tex-539-C	45	-	55	-	55	-	45	-	45	-	-	-
Tests on rejuvenating agent: Viscosity, 140°F, cSt	T 201	-	-	-	-	-	-	50	175	50	175	-	-
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	-	-	-	-	-	-	380	-	380	-	-	-
Saturates, % by weight	D2007	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	30	-	30	-	-
Solubility in n-pentane, % by weight	D2007	-	-	-	-	-	-	99	-	99	-	-	-
Tests on rejuvenating agent after TFO or RTFO:	T 240 or T 179												
Weight Change, %		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	6.5	-	6.5	-	-
Viscosity Ratio		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3.0	-	3.0	-	-
Tests on latex: ⁴ Tensile strength, die C dumbbell, psi	D412 ⁵	-	-	-	-	-	-	500	-	500	-	-	-
Change in mass after immersion in rejuvenating agent, %	D471	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	40 ⁶	-	40 ⁶	-	-

- Exception to T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350°F (±0°F). Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 min. (±5 min.) from the first application of heat.
- CRS-2P must meet one of either the ductility or elastic recovery requirements.
- With all precertification samples of CMS-1P or CMS-2P, submit certified test reports showing that the rejuvenating agent and latex meet the stated requirements. Submit samples of these raw materials if requested by the Engineer.
- Preparation of latex films: Use any substrate which produces a film of uniform cross-section. Apply latex using a drawdown tool that will deliver enough material to achieve desired residual thickness. Cure films for 14 days at 75°F and 50% relative humidity.
- Cut samples for tensile strength determination using a crosshead speed of 20 in./min.
- Specimen must remain intact after exposure and removal of excess rejuvenating agent.

- 2.5. **Specialty Emulsions.** Provide specialty emulsion that is either asphalt-based or resin-based and meets the requirements of Table 11.

Table 11
Specialty Emulsions

Property	Test Procedure	Type-Grade					
		Medium-Setting				Slow-Setting	
		AE-P		EAP&T		PCE ¹	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol 77°F, sec. 122°F, sec.	T 72	– 15	– 150	– –	– –	10 –	100 –
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1	–	0.1	–	0.1
Miscibility ²	T 59	–	–	Pass	–	Pass	–
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.10 N CaCl ₂ , %	T 59	–	70	–	–	–	–
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1	–	1	–	–
Particle size, ⁵ % by volume < 2.5 μm	Tex-238-F ³	–	–	90	–	90	–
Asphalt emulsion distillation to 500°F followed by Cutback asphalt distillation of residue to 680°F: Residue after both distillations, % by wt. Total oil distillate from both distillations, % by volume of emulsion	T 59 & T 78	40 25	– 40	– –	– –	– –	– –
Residue by distillation, % by wt.	T 59	–	–	60	–	–	–
Residue by evaporation, ⁴ % by wt.	T 59	–	–	–	–	60	–
Tests on residue after all distillation(s): Viscosity, 140°F, poise Kinematic viscosity, ⁵ 140°F, cSt Flash point C.O.C., °F Solubility in trichloroethylene, % Float test, 122°F, sec.	T 202 T 201 T 48 T 44 T 50	– – – 97.5 50	– – – – 200	800 – – – –	– – – – –	– 100 400 – –	– 350 – – –

Supply with each shipment of PCE:

a copy of a lab report from an approved analytical lab, signed by a lab official, indicating the PCE formulation does not meet any characteristics of a Resource Conservation Recovery Act (RCRA) hazardous waste;

a certification from the producer that the formulation supplied does not differ from the one tested and that no listed RCRA hazardous wastes or Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) have been mixed with the product; and
a Material Safety Data Sheet.

Exception to T 59: In dilution, use 350 ml of distilled or deionized water and a 1,000-ml beaker.

Use Tex-238-F, beginning at "Particle Size Analysis by Laser Diffraction," with distilled or deionized water as a medium and no dispersant, or use another approved method.

Exception to T 59: Leave sample in the oven until foaming ceases, then cool and weigh.

PCE must meet either the kinematic viscosity requirement or the particle size requirement.

- 2.6. **Recycling Agent.** Recycling agent and emulsified recycling agent must meet the requirements in Table 12. Additionally, recycling agent and residue from emulsified recycling agent, when added in the specified proportions to the recycled asphalt, must meet the properties specified on the plans.

Table 12
Recycling Agent and Emulsified Recycling Agent

Property	Test Procedure	Recycling Agent		Emulsified Recycling Agent	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol, 77°F, sec.	T 72	–	–	15	100
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	–	–	0.1
Miscibility ¹	T 59	–	–	No coagulation	
Residue by evaporation, ² % by wt.	T 59	–	–	60	–
Tests on recycling agent or residue from evaporation: Flash point, C.O.C., °F Kinematic viscosity, 140°F, cSt 275°F, cSt	T 48 T 201	400 75	– 200	400 75	– 200
		–	10.0	–	10.0

1. Exception to T 59: Use 0.02 N CaCl₂ solution in place of water.

2. Exception to T 59: Maintain sample at 300°F until foaming ceases, then cool and weigh.

- 2.7. **Crumb Rubber Modifier.** Crumb rubber modifier (CRM) consists of automobile and truck tires processed by ambient temperature grinding.

CRM must be:

- free from contaminants including fabric, metal, and mineral and other nonrubber substances;
- free-flowing; and
- nonfoaming when added to hot asphalt binder.

Ensure rubber gradation meets the requirements of the grades in Table 13 when tested in accordance with Tex-200-F, Part I, using a 50-g sample.

Table 13
CRM Gradations

Sieve Size (% Passing)	Grade A		Grade B		Grade C		Grade D	Grade E
	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max		
#8	100	–	–	–	–	–	As shown on the plans	As approved
#10	95	100	100	–	–	–		
#16	–	–	70	100	100	–		
#30	–	–	25	60	90	100		
#40	–	–	–	–	45	100		
#50	0	10	–	–	–	–		
#200	–	–	0	5	–	–		

- 2.8. **Crack Sealer.** Provide polymer-modified asphalt-emulsion crack sealer meeting the requirements of Table 14. Provide rubber-asphalt crack sealer meeting the requirements of Table 15.

Table 14
Polymer-Modified Asphalt-Emulsion Crack Sealer

Property	Test Procedure	Min	Max
Rotational viscosity, 77°F, cP	D2196, Method A	10,000	25,000
Sieve test, %	T 59	–	0.1
Storage stability, 1 day, %	T 59	–	1
Evaporation	Tex-543-C	65	–
Residue by evaporation, % by wt.			
Tests on residue from evaporation:			
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	35	75
Softening point, °F	T 53	140	–
Ductility, 39.2°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	–

Table 15
Rubber-Asphalt Crack Sealer

Property	Test Procedure	Class A		Class B	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
CRM content, Grade A or B, % by wt.	Tex-544-C	22	26	–	–
CRM content, Grade B, % by wt.	Tex-544-C	–	–	13	17
Virgin rubber content, ¹ % by wt.		–	–	2	–
Flash point, ² C.O.C., °F	T 48	400	–	400	–
Penetration, ³ 77°F, 150 g, 5 sec.	T 49	30	50	30	50
Penetration, ³ 32°F, 200 g, 60 sec.	T 49	12	–	12	–
Softening point, °F	T 53	–	–	170	–
Bond Test, non-immersed, 0.5 in specimen, 50% extension, 20°F ⁴	D5329	–	–	–	Pass

1. Provide certification that the Min % virgin rubber was added.
2. Agitate the sealing compound with a 3/8- to 1/2-in. (9.5- to 12.7-mm) wide, square-end metal spatula to bring the material on the bottom of the cup to the surface (i.e., turn the material over) before passing the test flame over the cup. Start at one side of the thermometer, move around to the other, and then return to the starting point using 8 to 10 rapid circular strokes. Accomplish agitation in 3 to 4 sec. Pass the test flame over the cup immediately after stirring is completed.
3. Exception to T 49: Substitute the cone specified in D217 for the penetration needle.
4. Allow no crack in the crack sealing materials or break in the bond between the sealer and the mortar blocks over 1/4 in. deep for any specimen after completion of the test.

- 2.9. **Asphalt-Rubber Binders.** Provide asphalt-rubber (A-R) binders that are mixtures of asphalt binder and CRM, which have been reacted at elevated temperatures. Provide A-R binders meeting D6114 and containing a minimum of 15% CRM by weight. Provide Types I or II, containing CRM Grade C, for use in hot-

mixed aggregate mixtures. Provide Types II or III, containing CRM Grade B, for use in surface treatment binder. Ensure binder properties meet the requirements of Table 16.

Table 16
A-R Binders

Property	Test Procedure	Binder Type					
		Type I		Type II		Type III	
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Apparent viscosity, 347°F, cP	D2196, Method A	1,500	5,000	1,500	5,000	1,500	5,000
Penetration, 77°F, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	25	75	25	75	50	100
Penetration, 39.2°F, 200 g, 60 sec.	T 49	10	–	15	–	25	–
Softening point, °F	T 53	135	–	130	–	125	–
Resilience, 77°F, %	D5329	25	–	20	–	10	–
Flash point, C.O.C., °F	T 48	450	–	450	–	450	–
Tests on residue from Thin-Film Oven Test:	T 179						
Retained penetration ratio, 39.2°F, 200 g, 60 sec., % of original	T 49	75	–	75	–	75	–

- 2.10. **Performance-Graded Binders.** Provide PG binders that are smooth and homogeneous, show no separation when tested in accordance with Tex-540-C, and meet the requirements of Table 17.

Separation testing is not required if:

- a modifier is introduced separately at the mix plant either by injection in the asphalt line or mixer,
- the binder is blended on site in continuously agitated tanks, or
- binder acceptance is based on field samples taken from an in-line sampling port at the hot-mix plant after the addition of modifiers.

Table 17
Performance-Graded Binders

Property and Test Method	Performance Grade																	
	PG 58			PG 64			PG 70			PG 76			PG 82					
	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28
Average 7-day max pavement design temperature, °C ¹	< 58			< 64			< 70			< 76			< 82					
Min pavement design temperature, °C ¹	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28
Original Binder																		
Flash point, T 48, Min, °C	230																	
Viscosity, T 316: ^{2,3} Max, 3.0 Pa-s, test temperature, °C	135																	
Dynamic shear, T 315: ⁴ G*/sin(δ), Min, 1.00 kPa, Max, 2.00 kPa, ⁷ Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	58			64			70			76			82					
Elastic recovery, D6084, 50°F, % Min	-	-	30	-	-	30	50	-	30	50	60	30	50	60	70	50	60	70
Rolling Thin-Film Oven (Tex-541-C)																		
Mass loss, Tex-541-C, Max, %	1.0																	
Dynamic shear, T 315: G*/sin(δ), Min, 2.20 kPa, Max, 5.00 kPa, ⁷ Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	58			64			70			76			82					
Pressure Aging Vessel (PAV) Residue (R 28)																		
PAV aging temperature, °C	100																	
Dynamic shear, T 315: G*/sin(δ), Max, 5,000 kPa Test temperature @ 10 rad/sec., °C	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22
Creep stiffness, T 313: ^{5,6} S, max, 300 MPa, m-value, Min, 0.300 Test temperature @ 60 sec., °C	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18
Direct tension, T 314: ⁶ Failure strain, Min, 1.0% Test temperature @ 1.0 mm/min., °C	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18

- Pavement temperatures are estimated from air temperatures using an algorithm contained in a Department-supplied computer program, may be provided by the Department, or by following the procedures outlined in AASHTO MP 2 and PP 28.
- This requirement may be waived at the Department's discretion if the supplier warrants that the asphalt binder can be adequately pumped, mixed, and compacted at temperatures that meet all applicable safety, environmental, and constructability requirements. At test temperatures where the binder is a Newtonian fluid, any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary (T 201 or T 202) or rotational viscometry (T 316).
- Viscosity at 135°C is an indicator of mixing and compaction temperatures that can be expected in the lab and field. High values may indicate high mixing and compaction temperatures. Additionally, significant variation can occur from batch to batch. Contractors should be aware that variation could significantly impact their mixing and compaction operations. Contractors are therefore responsible for addressing any constructability issues that may arise.
- For quality control of unmodified asphalt binder production, measurement of the viscosity of the original asphalt binder may be substituted for dynamic shear measurements of G*/sin(δ) at test temperatures where the asphalt is a Newtonian fluid. Any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary (T 201 or T 202) or rotational viscometry (T 316).
- Silicone beam molds, as described in AASHTO TP 1-93, are acceptable for use.
- If creep stiffness is below 300 MPa, direct tension test is not required. If creep stiffness is between 300 and 600 MPa, the direct tension failure strain requirement can be used instead of the creep stiffness requirement. The m-value requirement must be satisfied in both cases.
- Maximum values for unaged and RTFO aged dynamic shear apply only to materials used as substitute binders, as described in specification items, 340, 341, and 344.

3. EQUIPMENT

Provide all equipment necessary to transport, store, sample, heat, apply, and incorporate asphalts, oils, and emulsions.

4. CONSTRUCTION

Typical Material Use. Use materials shown in Table 18, unless otherwise determined by the Engineer.

Table 18
Typical Material Use

Material Application	Typically Used Materials
Hot-mixed, hot-laid asphalt mixtures	PG binders, A-R binders Types I and II
Surface treatment	AC-5, AC-10, AC-5 w/2% SBR, AC-10 w/2% SBR, AC-15P, AC-20XP, AC-10-2TR, AC-20-5TR, HFRS-2, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2H, HFRS-2P, CRS-2P, CHFRS-2P, A-R binders Types II and III
Surface treatment (cool weather)	RS-1P, CRS-1P, RC-250, RC-800, RC-3000, MC-250, MC-800, MC-3000, MC-2400L
Precoating	AC-5, AC-10, PG 64-22, SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H
Tack coat	PG Binders, SS-1H, CSS-1H, EAP&T
Fog seal	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H
Hot-mixed, cold-laid asphalt mixtures	AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3, AES-300, AES-300P, CMS-2, CMS-2S
Patching mix	MC-800, SCM I, SCM II, AES-300S
Recycling	AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3, AES-150P, AES-300P, recycling agent, emulsified recycling agent
Crack sealing	SS-1P, polymer mod AE crack sealant, rubber asphalt crack sealers (Class A, Class B)
Microsurfacing	CSS-1P
Prime	MC-30, AE-P, EAP&T, PCE
Curing membrane	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE
Erosion control	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE

- 4.1. **Storage and Application Temperatures.** Use storage and application temperatures in accordance with Table 19. Store and apply materials at the lowest temperature yielding satisfactory results. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for any agitation requirements in storage. Manufacturer's instructions regarding recommended application and storage temperatures supersede those of Table 19.

Table 19
Storage and Application Temperatures

Type-Grade	Application		Storage Maximum (°F)
	Recommended Range (°F)	Maximum Allowable (°F)	
AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3	200–300	350	350
AC-5, AC-10	275–350	350	350
AC-5 w/2% SBR, AC-10 w/2% SBR, AC-15P, AC-20-5TR	300–375	375	360
RC-250	125–180	200	200
RC-800	170–230	260	260
RC-3000	215–275	285	285
MC-30, AE-P	70–150	175	175
MC-250	125–210	240	240
MC-800, SCM I, SCM II	175–260	275	275
MC-3000, MC-2400L	225–275	290	290
HFRS-2, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2H, HFRS-2P, CRS-2P, CMS-2, CMS-2S, AES-300, AES-300S, AES-150P, AES-300P	120–160	180	180
SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE, EAP&T, SS-1P, RS-1P, CRS-1P, CSS-1P, recycling agent, emulsified recycling agent, polymer mod AE crack sealant	50–130	140	140
PG binders	275–350	350	350
Rubber asphalt crack sealers (Class A, Class B)	350–375	400	–
A-R binders Types I, II, and III	325–425	425	425

5. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly but is subsidiary or is included in payment for other pertinent items.

Item 310

Prime Coat



1. DESCRIPTION

Prepare and treat existing or newly constructed surface with an asphalt binder or other specialty prime coat binder material. Apply blotter material as required.

2. MATERIALS

- 2.1. **Binder.** Use material of the type and grade shown on the plans in accordance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," or as listed in the Department's MPL for prime coat binders.
- 2.2. **Blotter.** Use either base course sweepings obtained from cleaning the base or native sand as blotter materials unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved.

3. EQUIPMENT

Provide applicable equipment in accordance with Article 316.3., "Equipment."

4. CONSTRUCTION

- 4.1. **General.** Apply the mixture when the air temperature is at or above 60°F, or above 50°F and rising. Measure the air temperature in the shade away from artificial heat. The Engineer will determine when weather conditions are suitable for application.
- Do not permit traffic, hauling, or placement of subsequent courses over freshly constructed prime coats. Maintain the primed surface until placement of subsequent courses or acceptance of the work.
- 4.2. **Surface Preparation.** Prepare the surface by sweeping or other approved methods. Lightly sprinkle the surface with water before applying bituminous material, when directed, to control dust and ensure absorption.
- 4.3. **Application.**
- 4.3.1. **Binder.** The Engineer will select the application temperature within the limits recommended in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," or by the material manufacturer. Apply material within 15°F of the selected temperature but do not exceed the maximum allowable temperature.
- Distribute the material smoothly and evenly at the rate selected by the Engineer. Roll the freshly applied prime coat with a pneumatic-tire roller to ensure penetration when directed.
- 4.3.2. **Blotter.** Spread blotter material before allowing traffic to use a primed surface. Apply blotter material to primed surface at the specified rate when "Prime Coat and Blotter" is shown on the plans as a bid item or as directed. Apply blotter to spot locations when "Prime Coat" is shown on the plans as a bid item or as directed to accommodate traffic movement through the work area. Remove blotter material before placing the surface. Dispose of blotter material according to applicable state and federal requirements.

5. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by the gallon of binder placed and accepted.

6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Prime Coat" or "Prime Coat and Blotter" of the type and grade of binder specified. This price is full compensation for cleaning and sprinkling the area to be primed; materials, including blotter material; and rolling, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Item 340

Dense-Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt (Small Quantity)



1. DESCRIPTION

Construct a hot-mix asphalt (HMA) pavement layer composed of a compacted, dense-graded mixture of aggregate and asphalt binder mixed hot in a mixing plant. This specification is intended for small quantity (SQ) HMA projects, typically under 5,000 tons total production.

2. MATERIALS

Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications.

Notify the Engineer of all material sources and before changing any material source or formulation. The Engineer will verify that the specification requirements are met when the Contractor makes a source or formulation change, and may require a new laboratory mixture design, trial batch, or both. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time during the project to verify specification compliance in accordance with Item 6, "Control of Materials."

- 2.1. **Aggregate.** Furnish aggregates from sources that conform to the requirements shown in Table 1 and as specified in this Section. Aggregate requirements in this Section, including those shown in Table 1, may be modified or eliminated when shown on the plans. Additional aggregate requirements may be specified when shown on the plans. Provide aggregate stockpiles that meet the definitions in this Section for coarse, intermediate, or fine aggregate. Aggregate from reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) is not required to meet Table 1 requirements unless otherwise shown on the plans. Supply aggregates that meet the definitions in Tex-100-E for crushed gravel or crushed stone. The Engineer will designate the plant or the quarry as the sampling location. Provide samples from materials produced for the project. The Engineer will establish the Surface Aggregate Classification (SAC) and perform Los Angeles abrasion, magnesium sulfate soundness, and Micro-Deval tests. Perform all other aggregate quality tests listed in Table 1. Document all test results on the mixture design report. The Engineer may perform tests on independent or split samples to verify Contractor test results. Stockpile aggregates for each source and type separately. Determine aggregate gradations for mixture design and production testing based on the washed sieve analysis given in Tex-200-F, Part II.

- 2.1.1. **Coarse Aggregate.** Coarse aggregate stockpiles must have no more than 20% material passing the No. 8 sieve. Aggregates from sources listed in the Department's *Bituminous Rated Source Quality Catalog* (BRSQC) are preapproved for use. Use only the rated values for hot-mix listed in the BRSQC. Rated values for surface treatment (ST) do not apply to coarse aggregate sources used in hot-mix asphalt.

For sources not listed on the Department's BRSQC:

- build an individual stockpile for each material;
- request the Department test the stockpile for specification compliance; and
- once approved, do not add material to the stockpile unless otherwise approved.

Provide aggregate from non-listed sources only when tested by the Engineer and approved before use. Allow 30 calendar days for the Engineer to sample, test, and report results for non-listed sources.

Provide coarse aggregate with at least the minimum SAC shown on the plans. SAC requirements only apply to aggregates used on the surface of travel lanes. SAC requirements apply to aggregates used on surfaces other than travel lanes when shown on the plans. The SAC for sources on the Department's *Aggregate Quality Monitoring Program* (AQMP) (Tex-499-A) is listed in the BRSQC.

- 2.1.1.1. **Blending Class A and Class B Aggregates.** Class B aggregate meeting all other requirements in Table 1 may be blended with a Class A aggregate to meet requirements for Class A materials. Ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source when blending Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement. Blend by volume if the bulk specific gravities of the Class A and B aggregates differ by more than 0.300. Coarse aggregate from RAP and Recycled Asphalt Shingles (RAS) will be considered as Class B aggregate for blending purposes.

The Engineer may perform tests at any time during production, when the Contractor blends Class A and B aggregates to meet a Class A requirement, to ensure that at least 50% by weight, or volume if required, of the material retained on the No. 4 sieve comes from the Class A aggregate source. The Engineer will use the Department's mix design Excel template, when electing to verify conformance, to calculate the percent of Class A aggregate retained on the No. 4 sieve by inputting the bin percentages shown from readouts in the control room at the time of production and stockpile gradations measured at the time of production. The Engineer may determine the gradations based on either washed or dry sieve analysis from samples obtained from individual aggregate cold feed bins or aggregate stockpiles. The Engineer may perform spot checks using the gradations supplied by the Contractor on the mixture design report as an input for the Excel template; however, a failing spot check will require confirmation with a stockpile gradation determined by the Engineer.

- 2.1.2. **Intermediate Aggregate.** Aggregates not meeting the definition of coarse or fine aggregate will be defined as intermediate aggregate. Supply intermediate aggregates, when used, that are free from organic impurities.

The Engineer may test the intermediate aggregate in accordance with Tex-408-A to verify the material is free from organic impurities. Supply intermediate aggregate from coarse aggregate sources, when used, that meet the requirements shown in Table 1 unless otherwise approved.

Test the stockpile if 10% or more of the stockpile is retained on the No. 4 sieve, and verify that it meets the requirements in Table 1 for crushed face count (Tex-460-A) and flat and elongated particles (Tex-280-F).

- 2.1.3. **Fine Aggregate.** Fine aggregates consist of manufactured sands, screenings, and field sands. Fine aggregate stockpiles must meet the gradation requirements in Table 2. Supply fine aggregates that are free from organic impurities. The Engineer may test the fine aggregate in accordance with Tex-408-A to verify the material is free from organic impurities. No more than 15% of the total aggregate may be field sand or other uncrushed fine aggregate. Use fine aggregate, with the exception of field sand, from coarse aggregate sources that meet the requirements shown in Table 1 unless otherwise approved.

Test the stockpile if 10% or more of the stockpile is retained on the No. 4 sieve, and verify that it meets the requirements in Table 1 for crushed face count (Tex-460-A) and flat and elongated particles (Tex-280-F).

Table 1
Aggregate Quality Requirements

Property	Test Method	Requirement
Coarse Aggregate		
SAC	Tex-499-A (AQMP)	As shown on the plans
Deleterious material, %, Max	Tex-217-F, Part I	1.5
Decantation, %, Max	Tex-217-F, Part II	1.5
Micro-Deval abrasion, %	Tex-461-A	Note ¹
Los Angeles abrasion, %, Max	Tex-410-A	40
Magnesium sulfate soundness, 5 cycles, %, Max	Tex-411-A	30
Crushed face count, ² %, Min	Tex-460-A, Part I	85
Flat and elongated particles @ 5:1, %, Max	Tex-280-F	10
Fine Aggregate		
Linear shrinkage, %, Max	Tex-107-E	3
Combined Aggregate³		
Sand equivalent, %, Min	Tex-203-F	45

1. Not used for acceptance purposes. Optional test used by the Engineer as an indicator of the need for further investigation.
2. Only applies to crushed gravel.
3. Aggregates, without mineral filler, RAP, RAS, or additives, combined as used in the job-mix formula (JMF).

Table 2
Gradation Requirements for Fine Aggregate

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
3/8"	100
#8	70–100
#200	0–30

- 2.2. **Mineral Filler.** Mineral filler consists of finely divided mineral matter such as agricultural lime, crusher fines, hydrated lime, or fly ash. Mineral filler is allowed unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use no more than 2% hydrated lime or fly ash unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use no more than 1% hydrated lime if a substitute binder is used unless otherwise shown on the plans or allowed. Test all mineral fillers except hydrated lime and fly ash in accordance with Tex-107-E to ensure specification compliance. The plans may require or disallow specific mineral fillers. Provide mineral filler, when used, that:
- is sufficiently dry, free-flowing, and free from clumps and foreign matter as determined by the Engineer;
 - does not exceed 3% linear shrinkage when tested in accordance with Tex-107-E; and
 - meets the gradation requirements in Table 3.

Table 3
Gradation Requirements for Mineral Filler

Sieve Size	% Passing by Weight or Volume
#8	100
#200	55–100

- 2.3. **Baghouse Fines.** Fines collected by the baghouse or other dust-collecting equipment may be reintroduced into the mixing drum.
- 2.4. **Asphalt Binder.** Furnish the type and grade of performance-graded (PG) asphalt specified on the plans.
- 2.5. **Tack Coat.** Furnish CSS-1H, SS-1H, or a PG binder with a minimum high-temperature grade of PG 58 for tack coat binder in accordance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." Specialized or preferred tack coat materials may be allowed or required when shown on the plans. Do not dilute emulsified asphalts at the terminal, in the field, or at any other location before use.

The Engineer will obtain at least one sample of the tack coat binder per project in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part III, and test it to verify compliance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions." The Engineer will obtain the sample from the asphalt distributor immediately before use.

- 2.6. **Additives.** Use the type and rate of additive specified when shown on the plans. Additives that facilitate mixing, compaction, or improve the quality of the mixture are allowed when approved. Provide the Engineer

with documentation, such as the bill of lading, showing the quantity of additives used in the project unless otherwise directed.

2.6.1. **Lime and Liquid Antistripping Agent.** When lime or a liquid antistripping agent is used, add in accordance with Item 301, "Asphalt Antistripping Agents." Do not add lime directly into the mixing drum of any plant where lime is removed through the exhaust stream unless the plant has a baghouse or dust collection system that reintroduces the lime into the drum.

2.6.2. **Warm Mix Asphalt (WMA).** Warm Mix Asphalt (WMA) is defined as HMA that is produced within a target temperature discharge range of 215°F and 275°F using approved WMA additives or processes from the Department's MPL.

WMA is allowed for use on all projects and is required when shown on the plans. When WMA is required, the maximum placement or target discharge temperature for WMA will be set at a value below 275°F.

Department-approved WMA additives or processes may be used to facilitate mixing and compaction of HMA produced at target discharge temperatures above 275°F; however, such mixtures will not be defined as WMA.

2.7. **Recycled Materials.** Use of RAP and RAS is permitted unless otherwise shown on the plans. Do not exceed the maximum allowable percentages of RAP and RAS shown in Table 4. The allowable percentages shown in Table 4 may be decreased or increased when shown on the plans. Determine asphalt binder content and gradation of the RAP and RAS stockpiles for mixture design purposes in accordance with Tex-236-F. The Engineer may verify the asphalt binder content of the stockpiles at any time during production. Perform other tests on RAP and RAS when shown on the plans. Asphalt binder from RAP and RAS is designated as recycled asphalt binder. Calculate and ensure that the ratio of the recycled asphalt binder to total binder does not exceed the percentages shown in Table 5 during mixture design and HMA production when RAP or RAS is used. Use a separate cold feed bin for each stockpile of RAP and RAS during HMA production.

Surface, intermediate, and base mixes referenced in Tables 4 and 5 are defined as follows:

- **Surface.** The final HMA lift placed at or near the top of the pavement structure;
- **Intermediate.** Mixtures placed below an HMA surface mix and less than or equal to 8.0 in. from the riding surface; and
- **Base.** Mixtures placed greater than 8.0 in. from the riding surface.

2.7.1. **RAP.** RAP is salvaged, milled, pulverized, broken, or crushed asphalt pavement. Crush or break RAP so that 100% of the particles pass the 2 in. sieve. Fractionated RAP is defined as 2 or more RAP stockpiles, divided into coarse and fine fractions.

Use of Contractor-owned RAP, including HMA plant waste, is permitted unless otherwise shown on the plans. Department-owned RAP stockpiles are available for the Contractor's use when the stockpile locations are shown on the plans. If Department-owned RAP is available for the Contractor's use, the Contractor may use Contractor-owned fractionated RAP and replace it with an equal quantity of Department-owned RAP. This allowance does not apply to a Contractor using unfractionated RAP. Department-owned RAP generated through required work on the Contract is available for the Contractor's use when shown on the plans. Perform any necessary tests to ensure Contractor- or Department-owned RAP is appropriate for use. The Department will not perform any tests or assume any liability for the quality of the Department-owned RAP unless otherwise shown on the plans. The Contractor will retain ownership of RAP generated on the project when shown on the plans.

The coarse RAP stockpile will contain only material retained by processing over a 3/8-in. or 1/2-in. screen unless otherwise approved. The fine RAP stockpile will contain only material passing the 3/8-in. or 1/2-in. screen unless otherwise approved. The Engineer may allow the Contractor to use an alternate to the 3/8-in. or 1/2-in. screen to fractionate the RAP. The maximum percentages of fractionated RAP may be comprised of coarse or fine fractionated RAP or the combination of both coarse and fine fractionated RAP.

Do not use Department- or Contractor-owned RAP contaminated with dirt or other objectionable materials. Do not use Department- or Contractor-owned RAP if the decantation value exceeds 5% and the plasticity index is greater than 8. Test the stockpiled RAP for decantation in accordance with Tex-406-A, Part I. Determine the plasticity index in accordance with Tex-106-E if the decantation value exceeds 5%. The decantation and plasticity index requirements do not apply to RAP samples with asphalt removed by extraction or ignition.

Do not intermingle Contractor-owned RAP stockpiles with Department-owned RAP stockpiles. Remove unused Contractor-owned RAP material from the project site upon completion of the project. Return unused Department-owned RAP to the designated stockpile location.

Table 4
Maximum Allowable Amounts of RAP¹

Maximum Allowable Fractionated RAP ² (%)			Maximum Allowable Unfractionated RAP ³ (%)		
Surface	Intermediate	Base	Surface	Intermediate	Base
20.0	30.0	40.0	10.0	10.0	10.0

1. Must also meet the recycled binder to total binder ratio shown in Table 5.
2. Up to 5% RAS may be used separately or as a replacement for fractionated RAP.
3. Unfractionated RAP may not be combined with fractionated RAP or RAS.

2.7.2.

RAS. Use of post-manufactured RAS or post-consumer RAS (tear-offs) is permitted unless otherwise shown on the plans. Up to 5% RAS may be used separately or as a replacement for fractionated RAP in accordance with Table 4 and Table 5. RAS is defined as processed asphalt shingle material from manufacturing of asphalt roofing shingles or from re-roofing residential structures. Post-manufactured RAS is processed manufacturer's shingle scrap by-product. Post-consumer RAS is processed shingle scrap removed from residential structures. Comply with all regulatory requirements stipulated for RAS by the TCEQ. RAS may be used separately or in conjunction with RAP.

Process the RAS by ambient grinding or granulating such that 100% of the particles pass the 3/8 in. sieve when tested in accordance with Tex-200-F, Part I. Perform a sieve analysis on processed RAS material before extraction (or ignition) of the asphalt binder.

Add sand meeting the requirements of Table 1 and Table 2 or fine RAP to RAS stockpiles if needed to keep the processed material workable. Any stockpile that contains RAS will be considered a RAS stockpile and be limited to no more than 5.0% of the HMA mixture in accordance with Table 4.

Certify compliance of the RAS with DMS-11000, "Evaluating and Using Nonhazardous Recyclable Materials Guidelines." Treat RAS as an established nonhazardous recyclable material if it has not come into contact with any hazardous materials. Use RAS from shingle sources on the Department's MPL. Remove substantially all materials before use that are not part of the shingle, such as wood, paper, metal, plastic, and felt paper. Determine the deleterious content of RAS material for mixture design purposes in accordance with Tex-217-F, Part III. Do not use RAS if deleterious materials are more than 0.5% of the stockpiled RAS unless otherwise approved. Submit a sample for approval before submitting the mixture design. The Department will perform the testing for deleterious material of RAS to determine specification compliance.

2.8.

Substitute Binders. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the Contractor may use a substitute PG binder listed in Table 5 instead of the PG binder originally specified, if the substitute PG binder and mixture made with the substitute PG binder meet the following:

- the substitute binder meets the specification requirements for the substitute binder grade in accordance with Section 300.2.10., "Performance-Graded Binders"; and
- the mixture has less than 10.0 mm of rutting on the Hamburg Wheel test (Tex-242-F) after the number of passes required for the originally specified binder. Use of substitute PG binders may only be allowed at the discretion of the Engineer if the Hamburg Wheel test results are between 10.0 mm and 12.5 mm.

Table 5
Allowable Substitute PG Binders and Maximum Recycled Binder Ratios

Originally Specified PG Binder	Allowable Substitute PG Binder	Maximum Ratio of Recycled Binder ¹ to Total Binder (%)		
		Surface	Intermediate	Base
HMA				
76-22 ²	70-22 or 64-22	20.0	20.0	20.0
	70-28 or 64-28	30.0	35.0	40.0
70-22 ²	64-22	20.0	20.0	20.0
	64-28 or 58-28	30.0	35.0	40.0
64-22 ²	58-28	30.0	35.0	40.0
76-28 ²	70-28 or 64-28	20.0	20.0	20.0
	64-34	30.0	35.0	40.0
70-28 ²	64-28 or 58-28	20.0	20.0	20.0
	64-34 or 58-34	30.0	35.0	40.0
64-28 ²	58-28	20.0	20.0	20.0
	58-34	30.0	35.0	40.0
WMA³				
76-22 ²	70-22 or 64-22	30.0	35.0	40.0
70-22 ²	64-22 or 58-28	30.0	35.0	40.0
64-22 ⁴	58-28	30.0	35.0	40.0
76-28 ²	70-28 or 64-28	30.0	35.0	40.0
70-28 ²	64-28 or 58-28	30.0	35.0	40.0
64-28 ⁴	58-28	30.0	35.0	40.0

1. Combined recycled binder from RAP and RAS.
2. Use no more than 20.0% recycled binder when using this originally specified PG binder.
3. WMA as defined in Section 340.2.6.2., "Warm Mix Asphalt (WMA)."
4. When used with WMA, this originally specified PG binder is allowed for use at the maximum recycled binder ratios shown in this table.

3. EQUIPMENT

Provide required or necessary equipment in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement."

4. CONSTRUCTION

Produce, haul, place, and compact the specified paving mixture. In addition to tests required by the specification, Contractors may perform other QC tests as deemed necessary. At any time during the project, the Engineer may perform production and placement tests as deemed necessary in accordance with Item 5, "Control of the Work." Schedule and participate in a pre-paving meeting with the Engineer on or before the first day of paving unless otherwise directed.

- 4.1. **Certification.** Personnel certified by the Department-approved hot-mix asphalt certification program must conduct all mixture designs, sampling, and testing in accordance with Table 6. Supply the Engineer with a list of certified personnel and copies of their current certificates before beginning production and when personnel changes are made. Provide a mixture design developed and signed by a Level 2 certified specialist.

Table 6
Test Methods, Test Responsibility, and Minimum Certification Levels

Test Description	Test Method	Contractor	Engineer	Level ¹
1. Aggregate and Recycled Material Testing				
Sampling	Tex-221-F	✓	✓	1A
Dry sieve	Tex-200-F, Part I	✓	✓	1A
Washed sieve	Tex-200-F, Part II	✓	✓	1A
Deleterious material	Tex-217-F, Parts I & III	✓	✓	1A
Decantation	Tex-217-F, Part II	✓	✓	1A
Los Angeles abrasion	Tex-410-A		✓	TxDOT
Magnesium sulfate soundness	Tex-411-A		✓	TxDOT
Micro-Deval abrasion	Tex-461-A		✓	2
Crushed face count	Tex-460-A	✓	✓	2
Flat and elongated particles	Tex-280-F	✓	✓	2
Linear shrinkage	Tex-107-E	✓	✓	2
Sand equivalent	Tex-203-F	✓	✓	2
Organic impurities	Tex-408-A	✓	✓	2
2. Asphalt Binder & Tack Coat Sampling				
Asphalt binder sampling	Tex-500-C, Part II	✓	✓	1A/1B
Tack coat sampling	Tex-500-C, Part III	✓	✓	1A/1B
3. Mix Design & Verification				
Design and JMF changes	Tex-204-F	✓	✓	2
Mixing	Tex-205-F	✓	✓	2
Molding (TGC)	Tex-206-F	✓	✓	1A
Molding (SGC)	Tex-241-F	✓	✓	1A
Laboratory-molded density	Tex-207-F	✓	✓	1A
VMA ² (calculation only)	Tex-204-F	✓	✓	2
Rice gravity	Tex-227-F	✓	✓	1A
Ignition oven correction factors ³	Tex-236-F	✓	✓	2
Indirect tensile strength	Tex-226-F	✓	✓	2
Hamburg Wheel test	Tex-242-F	✓	✓	2
Boil test	Tex-530-C	✓	✓	1A
4. Production Testing				
Mixture sampling	Tex-222-F	✓	✓	1A
Molding (TGC)	Tex-206-F		✓	1A
Molding (SGC)	Tex-241-F		✓	1A
Laboratory-molded density	Tex-207-F		✓	1A
VMA ² (calculation only)	Tex-204-F		✓	1A
Rice gravity	Tex-227-F		✓	1A
Gradation & asphalt binder content ³	Tex-236-F		✓	1A
Moisture content	Tex-212-F		✓	1A
Hamburg Wheel test	Tex-242-F		✓	2
Boil test	Tex-530-C		✓	1A
5. Placement Testing				
Trimming roadway cores	Tex-207-F	✓	✓	1A/1B
In-place air voids	Tex-207-F		✓	1A/1B
Establish rolling pattern	Tex-207-F	✓		1B
Ride quality measurement	Tex-1001-S	✓	✓	Note ⁴

- Level 1A, 1B, and 2 are certification levels provided by the Hot Mix Asphalt Center certification program.
- Voids in mineral aggregates.
- Refer to Section 340.4.8.3., "Production Testing," for exceptions to using an ignition oven.
- Profiler and operator are required to be certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute facility when Surface Test Type B is specified.

4.2. **Reporting, Testing, and Responsibilities.** Use Department-provided Excel templates to record and calculate all test data pertaining to the mixture design. The Engineer will use Department Excel templates for any production and placement testing. Obtain the latest version of the Excel templates at <http://www.txdot.gov/inside-txdot/forms-publications/consultants-contractors/forms/site-manager.html> or from the Engineer.

The maximum allowable time for the Engineer to exchange test data with the Contractor is as given in Table 7 unless otherwise approved. The Engineer will immediately report to the Contractor any test result that requires suspension of production or placement or that fails to meet the specification requirements.

Subsequent mix placed after test results are available to the Contractor, which require suspension of operations, may be considered unauthorized work. Unauthorized work will be accepted or rejected at the discretion of the Engineer in accordance with Article 5.3., "Conformity with Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions."

Table 7
Reporting Schedule

Description	Reported By	Reported To	To Be Reported Within
Production Testing			
Gradation	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the test
Asphalt binder content			
Laboratory-molded density			
VMA (calculation)			
Hamburg Wheel test			
Moisture content			
Boil test			
Binder tests	Placement Testing		
In-place air voids	Engineer	Contractor	1 working day of completion of the test ¹

1. 2 days are allowed if cores cannot be dried to constant weight within 1 day.

4.3. Mixture Design.

4.3.1. **Design Requirements.** The Contractor may design the mixture using a Texas Gyratory Compactor (TGC) or a Superpave Gyratory Compactor (SGC) unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use the typical weight design example given in Tex-204-F, Part I, when using a TGC. Use the Superpave mixture design procedure given in Tex-204-F, Part IV, when using a SGC. Design the mixture to meet the requirements listed in Tables 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9, and 10.

4.3.1.1. **Target Laboratory-Molded Density When The TGC Is Used.** Design the mixture at a 96.5% target laboratory-molded density. Increase the target laboratory-molded density to 97.0% or 97.5% at the Contractor's discretion or when shown on the plans or specification.

4.3.1.2. **Design Number of Gyration (Ndesign) When The SGC Is Used.** Design the mixture at 50 gyrations (Ndesign). Use a target laboratory-molded density of 96.0% to design the mixture; however, adjustments can be made to the Ndesign value as noted in Table 9. The Ndesign level may be reduced to no less than 35 gyrations at the Contractor's discretion.

Use an approved laboratory from the Department's MPL to perform the Hamburg Wheel test in accordance with Tex-242-F, and provide results with the mixture design, or provide the laboratory mixture and request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test. The Engineer will be allowed 10 working days to provide the Contractor with Hamburg Wheel test results on the laboratory mixture design.

The Engineer will provide the mixture design when shown on the plans. The Contractor may submit a new mixture design at any time during the project. The Engineer will verify and approve all mixture designs (JMF1) before the Contractor can begin production.

Provide the Engineer with a mixture design report using the Department-provided Excel template. Include the following items in the report:

- the combined aggregate gradation, source, specific gravity, and percent of each material used;
- asphalt binder content and aggregate gradation of RAP and RAS stockpiles;
- the target laboratory-molded density (or Ndesign level when using the SGC);

- results of all applicable tests;
- the mixing and molding temperatures;
- the signature of the Level 2 person or persons that performed the design;
- the date the mixture design was performed; and
- a unique identification number for the mixture design.

Table 8
Master Gradation Limits (% Passing by Weight or Volume) and VMA Requirements

Sieve Size	A Coarse Base	B Fine Base	C Coarse Surface	D Fine Surface	F Fine Mixture
2"	100.0 ¹	–	–	–	–
1-1/2"	98.0–100.0	100.0 ¹	–	–	–
1"	78.0–94.0	98.0–100.0	100.0 ¹	–	–
3/4"	64.0–85.0	84.0–98.0	95.0–100.0	100.0 ¹	–
1/2"	50.0–70.0	–	–	98.0–100.0	100.0 ¹
3/8"	–	60.0–80.0	70.0–85.0	85.0–100.0	98.0–100.0
#4	30.0–50.0	40.0–60.0	43.0–63.0	50.0–70.0	70.0–90.0
#8	22.0–36.0	29.0–43.0	32.0–44.0	35.0–46.0	38.0–48.0
#30	8.0–23.0	13.0–28.0	14.0–28.0	15.0–29.0	12.0–27.0
#50	3.0–19.0	6.0–20.0	7.0–21.0	7.0–20.0	6.0–19.0
#200	2.0–7.0	2.0–7.0	2.0–7.0	2.0–7.0	2.0–7.0
Design VMA, % Minimum					
–	12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0	16.0
Production (Plant-Produced) VMA, % Minimum					
–	11.5	12.5	13.5	14.5	15.5

1. Defined as maximum sieve size. No tolerance allowed.

Table 9
Laboratory Mixture Design Properties

Mixture Property	Test Method	Requirement
Target laboratory-molded density, % (TGC)	Tex-207-F	96.5 ¹
Design gyrations (N _{design} for SGC)	Tex-241-F	50 ²
Indirect tensile strength (dry), psi	Tex-226-F	85–200 ³
Boil test ⁴	Tex-530-C	–

1. Increase to 97.0% or 97.5% at the Contractor's discretion or when shown on the plans or specification.
2. Adjust within a range of 35–100 gyrations when shown on the plans or specification or when mutually agreed between the Engineer and Contractor.
3. The Engineer may allow the IDT strength to exceed 200 psi if the corresponding Hamburg Wheel rut depth is greater than 3.0 mm and less than 12.5 mm.
4. Used to establish baseline for comparison to production results. May be waived when approved.

Table 10
Hamburg Wheel Test Requirements

High-Temperature Binder Grade	Test Method	Minimum # of Passes ¹ @ 12.5 mm ² Rut Depth, Tested @ 50°C
PG 64 or lower	Tex-242-F	10,000
PG 70		15,000
PG 76 or higher		20,000

1. May be decreased or waived when shown on the plans.
2. When the rut depth at the required minimum number of passes is less than 3 mm, the Engineer may require the Contractor to increase the target laboratory-molded density (TGC) by 0.5% to no more than 97.5% or lower the N_{design} level (SGC) to no less than 35 gyrations.

4.3.2.

Job-Mix Formula Approval. The job-mix formula (JMF) is the combined aggregate gradation, target laboratory-molded density (or N_{design} level), and target asphalt percentage used to establish target values

for hot-mix production. JMF1 is the original laboratory mixture design used to produce the trial batch. When WMA is used, JMF1 may be designed and submitted to the Engineer without including the WMA additive. When WMA is used, document the additive or process used and recommended rate on the JMF1 submittal. Furnish a mix design report (JMF1) with representative samples of all component materials and request approval to produce the trial batch. Provide approximately 10,000 g of the design mixture and request that the Department perform the Hamburg Wheel test if opting to have the Department perform the test. The Engineer will verify JMF1 based on plant-produced mixture from the trial batch unless otherwise determined. The Engineer may accept an existing mixture design previously used on a Department project and may waive the trial batch to verify JMF1. Provide split samples of the mixtures and blank samples used to determine the ignition oven correction factors. The Engineer will determine the aggregate and asphalt correction factors from the ignition oven used for production testing in accordance with Tex-236-F.

The Engineer will use a TGC calibrated in accordance with Tex-914-K in molding production samples. Provide an SGC at the Engineer's field laboratory for use in molding production samples if the SGC is used to design the mix.

The Engineer may perform Tex-530-C and retain the tested sample for comparison purposes during production. The Engineer may waive the requirement for the boil test.

4.3.3. **JMF Adjustments.** If JMF adjustments are necessary to achieve the specified requirements, the adjusted JMF must:

- be provided to the Engineer in writing before the start of a new lot;
- be numbered in sequence to the previous JMF;
- meet the mixture requirements in Table 4 and Table 5;
- meet the master gradation limits shown in Table 8; and
- be within the operational tolerances of the current JMF listed in Table 11.

The Engineer may adjust the asphalt binder content to maintain desirable laboratory density near the optimum value while achieving other mix requirements.

Table 11
Operational Tolerances

Description	Test Method	Allowable Difference Between Trial Batch and JMF1 Target	Allowable Difference from Current JMF Target
Individual % retained for #8 sieve and larger	Tex-200-F or Tex-236-F	Must be within master grading limits in Table 8	±5.0 ^{1,2}
Individual % retained for sieves smaller than #8 and larger than #200			±3.0 ^{1,2}
% passing the #200 sieve			±2.0 ^{1,2}
Asphalt binder content, %	Tex-236-F	±0.5	±0.3 ²
Laboratory-molded density, %	Tex-207-F	±1.0	±1.0
VMA, %, min	Tex-204-F	Note ³	Note ³

1. When within these tolerances, mixture production gradations may fall outside the master grading limits; however, the % passing the #200 will be considered out of tolerance when outside the master grading limits.
2. Only applies to mixture produced for Lot 1 and higher.
3. Mixture is required to meet Table 8 requirements.

4.4. **Production Operations.** Perform a new trial batch when the plant or plant location is changed. Take corrective action and receive approval to proceed after any production suspension for noncompliance to the specification. Submit a new mix design and perform a new trial batch when the asphalt binder content of:

- any RAP stockpile used in the mix is more than 0.5% higher than the value shown on the mixture design report; or
- RAS stockpile used in the mix is more than 2.0% higher than the value shown on the mixture design report.

4.4.1. **Storage and Heating of Materials.** Do not heat the asphalt binder above the temperatures specified in Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," or outside the manufacturer's recommended values. Provide the Engineer with daily records of asphalt binder and hot-mix asphalt discharge temperatures (in legible and

discernible increments) in accordance with Item 320, "Equipment for Asphalt Concrete Pavement," unless otherwise directed. Do not store mixture for a period long enough to affect the quality of the mixture, nor in any case longer than 12 hr. unless otherwise approved.

- 4.4.2. **Mixing and Discharge of Materials.** Notify the Engineer of the target discharge temperature and produce the mixture within 25°F of the target. Monitor the temperature of the material in the truck before shipping to ensure that it does not exceed 350°F (or 275°F for WMA) and is not lower than 215°F. The Department will not pay for or allow placement of any mixture produced above 350°F.

Produce WMA within the target discharge temperature range of 215°F and 275°F when WMA is required. Take corrective action any time the discharge temperature of the WMA exceeds the target discharge range. The Engineer may suspend production operations if the Contractor's corrective action is not successful at controlling the production temperature within the target discharge range. Note that when WMA is produced, it may be necessary to adjust burners to ensure complete combustion such that no burner fuel residue remains in the mixture.

Control the mixing time and temperature so that substantially all moisture is removed from the mixture before discharging from the plant. The Engineer may determine the moisture content by oven-drying in accordance with Tex-212-F, Part II, and verify that the mixture contains no more than 0.2% of moisture by weight. The Engineer will obtain the sample immediately after discharging the mixture into the truck, and will perform the test promptly.

- 4.5. **Hauling Operations.** Clean all truck beds before use to ensure that mixture is not contaminated. Use a release agent shown on the Department's MPL to coat the inside bed of the truck when necessary.

Use equipment for hauling as defined in Section 340.4.6.3.2., "Hauling Equipment." Use other hauling equipment only when allowed.

- 4.6. **Placement Operations.** Collect haul tickets from each load of mixture delivered to the project and provide the Department's copy to the Engineer approximately every hour, or as directed. Use a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer to measure and record the internal temperature of the mixture as discharged from the truck or Material Transfer Device (MTD) before or as the mix enters the paver and an approximate station number or GPS coordinates on each ticket unless otherwise directed. Calculate the daily yield and cumulative yield for the specified lift and provide to the Engineer at the end of paving operations for each day unless otherwise directed. The Engineer may suspend production if the Contractor fails to produce and provide haul tickets and yield calculations by the end of paving operations for each day.

Prepare the surface by removing raised pavement markers and objectionable material such as moisture, dirt, sand, leaves, and other loose impediments from the surface before placing mixture. Remove vegetation from pavement edges. Place the mixture to meet the typical section requirements and produce a smooth, finished surface with a uniform appearance and texture. Offset longitudinal joints of successive courses of hot-mix by at least 6 in. Place mixture so that longitudinal joints on the surface course coincide with lane lines, or as directed. Ensure that all finished surfaces will drain properly.

Place the mixture at the rate or thickness shown on the plans. The Engineer will use the guidelines in Table 12 to determine the compacted lift thickness of each layer when multiple lifts are required. The thickness determined is based on the rate of 110 lb./sq. yd. for each inch of pavement unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Table 12
Compacted Lift Thickness and Required Core Height

Mixture Type	Compacted Lift Thickness Guidelines		Minimum Untrimmed Core Height (in.) Eligible for Testing
	Minimum (in.)	Maximum (in.)	
A	3.00	6.00	2.00
B	2.50	5.00	1.75
C	2.00	4.00	1.50
D	1.50	3.00	1.25
F	1.25	2.50	1.25

- 4.6.1. **Weather Conditions.** Place mixture when the roadway surface temperature is at or above 60°F unless otherwise approved. Measure the roadway surface temperature with a hand-held thermal camera or infrared thermometer. The Engineer may allow mixture placement to begin before the roadway surface reaches the required temperature if conditions are such that the roadway surface will reach the required temperature within 2 hr. of beginning placement operations. Place mixtures only when weather conditions and moisture conditions of the roadway surface are suitable as determined by the Engineer. The Engineer may restrict the Contractor from paving if the ambient temperature is likely to drop below 32°F within 12 hr. of paving.
- 4.6.2. **Tack Coat.** Clean the surface before placing the tack coat. The Engineer will set the rate between 0.04 and 0.10 gal. of residual asphalt per square yard of surface area. Apply a uniform tack coat at the specified rate unless otherwise directed. Apply the tack coat in a uniform manner to avoid streaks and other irregular patterns. Apply a thin, uniform tack coat to all contact surfaces of curbs, structures, and all joints. Allow adequate time for emulsion to break completely before placing any material. Prevent splattering of tack coat when placed adjacent to curb, gutter, and structures. Roll the tack coat with a pneumatic-tire roller to remove streaks and other irregular patterns when directed.
- 4.6.3. **Lay-Down Operations.**
- 4.6.3.1. **Windrow Operations.** Operate windrow pickup equipment so that when hot-mix is placed in windrows substantially all the mixture deposited on the roadbed is picked up and loaded into the paver.
- 4.6.3.2. **Hauling Equipment.** Use belly dumps, live bottom, or end dump trucks to haul and transfer mixture; however, with exception of paving miscellaneous areas, end dump trucks are only allowed when used in conjunction with an MTD with remixing capability unless otherwise allowed.
- 4.6.3.3. **Screed Heaters.** Turn off screed heaters, to prevent overheating of the mat, if the paver stops for more than 5 min.
- 4.7. **Compaction.** Compact the pavement uniformly to contain between 3.8% and 8.5% in-place air voids.
- Furnish the type, size, and number of rollers required for compaction as approved. Use a pneumatic-tire roller to seal the surface unless excessive pickup of fines occurs. Use additional rollers as required to remove any roller marks. Use only water or an approved release agent on rollers, tamps, and other compaction equipment unless otherwise directed.
- Use the control strip method shown in Tex-207-F, Part IV, on the first day of production to establish the rolling pattern that will produce the desired in-place air voids unless otherwise directed.
- Use tamps to thoroughly compact the edges of the pavement along curbs, headers, and similar structures and in locations that will not allow thorough compaction with rollers. The Engineer may require rolling with a trench roller on widened areas, in trenches, and in other limited areas.
- Complete all compaction operations before the pavement temperature drops below 160°F unless otherwise allowed. The Engineer may allow compaction with a light finish roller operated in static mode for pavement temperatures below 160°F.

Allow the compacted pavement to cool to 160°F or lower before opening to traffic unless otherwise directed. Sprinkle the finished mat with water or limewater, when directed, to expedite opening the roadway to traffic.

4.8. **Production Acceptance.**

4.8.1. **Production Lot.** Each day of production is defined as a production lot. Lots will be sequentially numbered and correspond to each new day of production. Note that lots are not subdivided into sublots for this specification.

4.8.2. **Production Sampling.**

4.8.2.1. **Mixture Sampling.** The Engineer may obtain mixture samples in accordance with Tex-222-F at any time during production.

4.8.2.2. **Asphalt Binder Sampling.** The Engineer may obtain or require the Contractor to obtain 1 qt. samples of the asphalt binder at any time during production from a port located immediately upstream from the mixing drum or pug mill in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part II. The Engineer may test any of the asphalt binder samples to verify compliance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions."

4.8.3. **Production Testing.** The Engineer will test at the frequency listed in the Department's *Guide Schedule of Sampling and Testing* and this specification. The Engineer may suspend production if production tests do not meet specifications or are not within operational tolerances listed in Table 11. Take immediate corrective action if the Engineer's laboratory-molded density on any sample is less than 95.0% or greater than 98.0%, to bring the mixture within these tolerances. The Engineer may suspend operations if the Contractor's corrective actions do not produce acceptable results. The Engineer will allow production to resume when the proposed corrective action is likely to yield acceptable results.

The Engineer may use alternate methods for determining the asphalt binder content and aggregate gradation if the aggregate mineralogy is such that Tex-236-F does not yield reliable results. Use the applicable test procedure if an alternate test method is selected.

Table 13
Production and Placement Testing

Description	Test Method
Individual % retained for #8 sieve and larger	Tex-200-F or Tex-236-F
Individual % retained for sieves smaller than #8 and larger than #200	
% passing the #200 sieve	
Laboratory-molded density	Tex-207-F
Laboratory-molded bulk specific gravity	
In-Place air voids	
VMA	Tex-204-F
Moisture content	Tex-212-F, Part II
Theoretical maximum specific (Rice) gravity	Tex-227-F
Asphalt binder content	Tex-236-F
Hamburg Wheel test	Tex-242-F
Recycled Asphalt Shingles (RAS) ¹	Tex-217-F, Part III
Asphalt binder sampling and testing	Tex-500-C
Tack coat sampling and testing	Tex-500-C, Part III
Boil test	Tex-530-C

1. Testing performed by the Construction Division or designated laboratory.

4.8.3.1. **voids in Mineral Aggregates (VMA).** The Engineer may determine the VMA for any production lot. Take immediate corrective action if the VMA value for any lot is less than the minimum VMA requirement for production listed in Table 8. Suspend production and shipment of the mixture if the Engineer's VMA result is more than 0.5% below the minimum VMA requirement for production listed in Table 8. In addition to suspending production, the Engineer may require removal and replacement or may allow the lot to be left in place without payment.

- 4.8.3.2. **Hamburg Wheel Test.** The Engineer may perform a Hamburg Wheel test at any time during production, including when the boil test indicates a change in quality from the materials submitted for JMF1. In addition to testing production samples, the Engineer may obtain cores and perform Hamburg Wheel tests on any areas of the roadway where rutting is observed. Suspend production until further Hamburg Wheel tests meet the specified values when the production or core samples fail the Hamburg Wheel test criteria in Table 10. Core samples, if taken, will be obtained from the center of the finished mat or other areas excluding the vehicle wheel paths. The Engineer may require up to the entire lot of any mixture failing the Hamburg Wheel test to be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

If the Department's or Department-approved laboratory's Hamburg Wheel test results in a "remove and replace" condition, the Contractor may request that the Department confirm the results by re-testing the failing material. The Construction Division will perform the Hamburg Wheel tests and determine the final disposition of the material in question based on the Department's test results.

- 4.8.4. **Individual Loads of Hot-Mix.** The Engineer can reject individual truckloads of hot-mix. When a load of hot-mix is rejected for reasons other than temperature, contamination, or excessive uncoated particles, the Contractor may request that the rejected load be tested. Make this request within 4 hr. of rejection. The Engineer will sample and test the mixture. If test results are within the operational tolerances shown in Table 11, payment will be made for the load. If test results are not within operational tolerances, no payment will be made for the load.

4.9. **Placement Acceptance.**

- 4.9.1. **Placement Lot.** A placement lot is defined as the area placed during a production lot (one day's production). Placement lot numbers will correspond with production lot numbers.

- 4.9.2. **Miscellaneous Areas.** Miscellaneous areas include areas that typically involve significant handwork or discontinuous paving operations, such as temporary detours, driveways, mailbox turnouts, crossovers, gores, spot level-up areas, and other similar areas. Miscellaneous areas also include level-ups and thin overlays when the layer thickness specified on the plans is less than the minimum untrimmed core height eligible for testing shown in Table 12. The specified layer thickness is based on the rate of 110 lb./sq. yd. for each inch of pavement unless another rate is shown on the plans. Compact miscellaneous areas in accordance with Section 340.4.7., "Compaction." Miscellaneous areas are not subject to in-place air void determination except for temporary detours when shown on the plans.

- 4.9.3. **Placement Sampling.** Provide the equipment and means to obtain and trim roadway cores on site. On site is defined as in close proximity to where the cores are taken. Obtain the cores within one working day of the time the placement lot is completed unless otherwise approved. Obtain two 6-in. diameter cores side-by-side at each location selected by the Engineer for in-place air void determination unless otherwise shown on the plans. For Type D and Type F mixtures, 4-in. diameter cores are allowed. Mark the cores for identification, measure and record the untrimmed core height, and provide the information to the Engineer. The Engineer will witness the coring operation and measurement of the core thickness.

Visually inspect each core and verify that the current paving layer is bonded to the underlying layer. Take corrective action if an adequate bond does not exist between the current and underlying layer to ensure that an adequate bond will be achieved during subsequent placement operations.

Trim the cores immediately after obtaining the cores from the roadway in accordance with Tex-207-F if the core heights meet the minimum untrimmed value listed in Table 12. Trim the cores on site in the presence of the Engineer. Use a permanent marker or paint pen to record the date and lot number on each core as well as the designation as Core A or B. The Engineer may require additional information to be marked on the core and may choose to sign or initial the core. The Engineer will take custody of the cores immediately after they are trimmed and will retain custody of the cores until the Department's testing is completed. Before turning the trimmed cores over to the Engineer, the Contractor may wrap the trimmed cores or secure them in a manner that will reduce the risk of possible damage occurring during transport by the Engineer. After testing, the Engineer will return the cores to the Contractor.

The Engineer may have the cores transported back to the Department's laboratory at the HMA plant via the Contractor's haul truck or other designated vehicle. In such cases where the cores will be out of the Engineer's possession during transport, the Engineer will use Department-provided security bags and the Roadway Core Custody protocol located at <http://www.txdot.gov/business/specifications.htm> to provide a secure means and process that protects the integrity of the cores during transport.

Instead of the Contractor trimming the cores on site immediately after coring, the Engineer and the Contractor may mutually agree to have the trimming operations performed at an alternate location such as a field laboratory or other similar location. In such cases, the Engineer will take possession of the cores immediately after they are obtained from the roadway and will retain custody of the cores until testing is completed. Either the Department or Contractor representative may perform trimming of the cores. The Engineer will witness all trimming operations in cases where the Contractor representative performs the trimming operation.

Dry the core holes and tack the sides and bottom immediately after obtaining the cores. Fill the hole with the same type of mixture and properly compact the mixture. Repair core holes with other methods when approved.

4.9.4. **Placement Testing.** The Engineer may measure in-place air voids at any time during the project to verify specification compliance.

4.9.4.1. **In-Place Air Voids.** The Engineer will measure in-place air voids in accordance with Tex-207-F and Tex-227-F. Cores not meeting the height requirements in Table 12 will not be tested. Before drying to a constant weight, cores may be pre-dried using a Corelok or similar vacuum device to remove excess moisture. The Engineer will use the corresponding theoretical maximum specific gravity to determine the air void content of each core. The Engineer will use the average air void content of the 2 cores to determine the in-place air voids at the selected location.

The Engineer will use the vacuum method to seal the core if required by Tex-207-F. The Engineer will use the test results from the unsealed core if the sealed core yields a higher specific gravity than the unsealed core. After determining the in-place air void content, the Engineer will return the cores and provide test results to the Contractor.

Take immediate corrective action when the in-place air voids exceed the range of 3.8% and 8.5% to bring the operation within these tolerances. The Engineer may suspend operations or require removal and replacement if the in-place air voids are less than 2.7% or greater than 9.9%. The Engineer will allow paving to resume when the proposed corrective action is likely to yield between 3.8% and 8.5% in-place air voids. Areas defined in Section 340.9.2., "Miscellaneous Areas," are not subject to in-place air void determination.

4.9.5. **Irregularities.** Identify and correct irregularities including segregation, rutting, raveling, flushing, fat spots, mat slippage, irregular color, irregular texture, roller marks, tears, gouges, streaks, uncoated aggregate particles, or broken aggregate particles. The Engineer may also identify irregularities, and in such cases, the Engineer will promptly notify the Contractor. If the Engineer determines that the irregularity will adversely affect pavement performance, the Engineer may require the Contractor to remove and replace (at the Contractor's expense) areas of the pavement that contain irregularities and areas where the mixture does not bond to the existing pavement. If irregularities are detected, the Engineer may require the Contractor to immediately suspend operations or may allow the Contractor to continue operations for no more than one day while the Contractor is taking appropriate corrective action.

4.9.6. **Ride Quality.** Use Surface Test Type A to evaluate ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

5. MEASUREMENT

Hot mix will be measured by the ton of composite hot-mix, which includes asphalt, aggregate, and additives. Measure the weight on scales in accordance with Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment."

6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under Section 340.5., "Measurement," will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Dense Graded Hot-Mix Asphalt (SQ)" of the mixture type, SAC, and binder specified. These prices are full compensation for surface preparation, materials including tack coat, placement, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Trial batches will not be paid for unless they are included in pavement work approved by the Department.

Pay adjustment for ride quality, if applicable, will be determined in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces."

Item 360

Concrete Pavement



1. DESCRIPTION

Construct hydraulic cement concrete pavement with or without curbs on the concrete pavement.

2. MATERIALS

- 2.1. **Hydraulic Cement Concrete.** Provide hydraulic cement concrete in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Use compressive strength testing unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide Class P concrete designed to meet a minimum average compressive strength of 3,200 psi or a minimum average flexural strength of 450 psi at 7 days or a minimum average compressive strength of 4,000 psi or a minimum average flexural strength of 570 psi at 28 days. Test in accordance with Tex-448-A or Tex-418-A.

Obtain written approval if the concrete mix design exceeds 520 lb. of cementitious material.

Use coarse aggregates for continuously reinforced concrete pavements to produce concrete with a coefficient of thermal expansion not more than 5.5×10^{-6} in./in./°F. Provide satisfactory Tex-428-A test data from an approved testing laboratory if the coarse aggregate coefficient of thermal expansion listed on the Department's *Concrete Rated Source Quality Catalog* is not equal to or less than 5.5×10^{-6} in./in./°F.

Provide Class HES concrete for very early opening of small pavement areas or leave-outs to traffic when shown on the plans or allowed. Design Class HES to meet the requirements of Class P and a minimum average compressive strength of 3,200 psi or a minimum average flexural strength of 450 psi in 24 hr., unless other early strength and time requirements are shown on the plans or allowed.

Use Class A or P concrete for curbs that are placed separately from the pavement. Provide concrete that is workable and cohesive, possesses satisfactory finishing qualities, and conforms to the mix design and mix design slump.

- 2.2. **Reinforcing Steel.** Provide Grade 60 or above, deformed steel for bar reinforcement in accordance with Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete." Provide positioning and supporting devices (baskets and chairs) capable of securing and holding the reinforcing steel in proper position before and during paving. Provide corrosion protection when shown on the plans.
- 2.2.1. **Dowels.** Provide smooth, straight dowels of the size shown on the plans, free of burrs, and conforming to the requirements of Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete." Coat dowels with a thin film of grease, wax, silicone or other approved de-bonding material. Provide dowel caps on the lubricated end of each dowel bar used in an expansion joint. Provide dowel caps filled with a soft compressible material with enough range of movement to allow complete closure of the expansion joint.
- 2.2.2. **Tie Bars.** Provide straight deformed steel tie bars. Provide either multiple-piece tie bars or single-piece tie bars as shown on the plans. Furnish multiple piece tie bar assemblies from the list of approved multiple-piece tie bars that have been prequalified in accordance with DMS-4515 "Multiple Piece Tie Bars for Concrete Pavements," when used. Multiple-piece tie bars used on individual projects must be sampled in accordance with Tex-711-I, and tested in accordance with DMS-4515 "Multiple Piece Tie Bars for Concrete Pavements."
- 2.3. **Alternative Reinforcing Materials.** Provide reinforcement materials of the dimensions and with the physical properties specified when allowed or required by the plans. Provide manufacturer's certification of required material properties.

- 2.4. **Curing Materials.** Provide Type 2 membrane curing compound conforming to DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants." Provide SS-1 emulsified asphalt conforming to Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," for concrete pavement to be overlaid with asphalt concrete under this Contract unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved. Provide materials for other methods of curing conforming to the requirements of Item 422, "Concrete Superstructures." Provide insulating blankets for curing fast track concrete pavement with a minimum thermal resistance (R) rating of 0.5 hour-square foot F/BTU. Use insulating blankets that are free from tears and are in good condition.
- 2.5. **Epoxy.** Provide Type III, Class C epoxy in accordance with DMS-6100, "Epoxies and Adhesives," for installing all drilled-in reinforcing steel. Submit a work plan and request approval for the use of epoxy types other than Type III, Class C.
- 2.6. **Evaporation Retardant.** Provide evaporation retardant conforming to DMS-4650., "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants."
- 2.7. **Joint Sealants and Fillers.** Provide Class 5 or Class 8 joint-sealant materials and fillers unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved and other sealant materials of the size, shape, and type shown on the plans in accordance with DMS-6310, "Joint Sealants and Fillers."

3. EQUIPMENT

Furnish and maintain all equipment in good working condition. Use measuring, mixing, and delivery equipment conforming to the requirements of Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Obtain approval for other equipment used.

- 3.1. **Placing, Consolidating, and Finishing Equipment.** Provide approved self-propelled paving equipment that uniformly distributes the concrete with minimal segregation and provides a smooth machine-finished consolidated concrete pavement conforming to plan line and grade. Provide an approved automatic grade control system on slip-forming equipment. Provide approved mechanically-operated finishing floats capable of producing a uniformly smooth pavement surface. Provide equipment capable of providing a fine, light water fog mist.

Provide mechanically-operated vibratory equipment capable of adequately consolidating the concrete. Provide immersion vibrators on the paving equipment at sufficiently close intervals to provide uniform vibration and consolidation of the concrete over the entire width and depth of the pavement and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Provide immersion vibrator units that operate at a frequency in air of at least 8,000 cycles per minute. Provide enough hand-operated immersion vibrators for timely and proper consolidation of the concrete along forms, at all joints and in areas not covered by other vibratory equipment. Surface vibrators may be used to supplement equipment-mounted immersion vibrators. Provide tachometers to verify the proper operation of all vibrators.

For small or irregular areas or when approved, the paving equipment described in this Section is not required.

- 3.2. **Forming Equipment.**
- 3.2.1. **Pavement Forms.** Provide metal side forms of sufficient cross-section, strength, and rigidity to support the paving equipment and resist the impact and vibration of the operation without visible springing or settlement. Use forms that are free from detrimental kinks, bends, or warps that could affect ride quality or alignment. Provide flexible or curved metal or wood forms for curves of 100-ft. radius or less.
- 3.2.2. **Curb Forms.** Provide curb forms for separately placed curbs that are not slipformed that conform to the requirements of Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."

- 3.3. **Reinforcing Steel Inserting Equipment.** Provide inserting equipment that accurately inserts and positions reinforcing steel in the plastic concrete parallel to the profile grade and horizontal alignment in accordance to plan details when approved.
- 3.4. **Texturing Equipment.**
- 3.4.1. **Carpet Drag.** Provide a carpet drag mounted on a work bridge or a manual moveable support system. Provide a single piece of carpet of sufficient transverse length to span the full width of the pavement being placed and adjustable so that a sufficient longitudinal length of carpet is in contact with the concrete being placed to produce the desired texture. Obtain approval to vary the length and width of the carpet to accommodate specific applications.
- 3.4.2. **Tining Equipment.** Provide a self-propelled metal tine device equipped with steel tines with cross-section approximately 1/32 in. thick × 1/12 in. wide. Provide tines for transverse tining equipment spaced at approximately 1 in., center-to-center, or provide tines for longitudinal tining equipment spaced at approximately 3/4 in., center-to-center. Manual methods that produce an equivalent texture may be used when it is impractical to use self-propelled equipment, such as for small areas, narrow width sections, and in emergencies due to equipment breakdown.
- 3.5. **Curing Equipment.** Provide a self-propelled machine for applying membrane curing compound using mechanically-pressurized spraying equipment with atomizing nozzles. Provide equipment and controls that maintain the required uniform rate of application over the entire paving area. Provide curing equipment that is independent of all other equipment when required to meet the requirements of Section 360.4.9., "Curing." Hand-operated pressurized spraying equipment with atomizing nozzles may only be used on small or irregular areas, narrow width sections, or in emergencies due to equipment breakdown.
- 3.6. **Sawing Equipment.** Provide power-driven concrete saws to saw the joints shown on the plans. Provide standby power-driven concrete saws during concrete sawing operations. Provide adequate illumination for nighttime sawing.
- 3.7. **Grinding Equipment.** Provide self-propelled powered grinding equipment that is specifically designed to smooth and texture concrete pavement using circular diamond blades when required. Provide equipment with automatic grade control capable of grinding at least a 3-ft. width longitudinally in each pass without damaging the concrete.
- 3.8. **Testing Equipment.** Provide testing equipment regardless of job-control testing responsibilities in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," unless otherwise shown on the plans or specified.
- 3.9. **Coring Equipment.** Provide coring equipment capable of extracting cores in accordance with the requirements of Tex-424-A when required.
- 3.10. **Miscellaneous Equipment.** Furnish both 10-ft. and 15-ft. steel or magnesium long-handled, standard straightedges. Furnish enough work bridges, long enough to span the pavement, for finishing and inspection operations.

4. CONSTRUCTION

Obtain approval for adjustments to plan grade-line to maintain thickness over minor subgrade or base high spots while maintaining clearances and drainage. Maintain subgrade or base in a smooth, clean, compacted condition in conformity with the required section and established grade until the pavement concrete is placed. Keep subgrade or base damp with water before placing pavement concrete.

Adequately light the active work areas for all nighttime operations. Provide and maintain tools and materials to perform testing.

4.1. **Paving and Quality Control Plan.** Submit a paving and quality control plan for approval before beginning pavement construction operations. Include details of all operations in the concrete paving process, including methods to construct transverse joints, methods to consolidate concrete at joints, longitudinal construction joint layout, sequencing, curing, lighting, early opening, leave-outs, sawing, inspection, testing, construction methods, other details and description of all equipment. List certified personnel performing the testing. Submit revisions to the paving and quality control plan for approval.

4.2. **Job-Control Testing.** Perform all fresh and hardened concrete job-control testing at the specified frequency unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide job-control testing personnel meeting the requirements of Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Provide and maintain testing equipment, including strength testing equipment at a location acceptable to the Engineer. Use of a commercial laboratory is acceptable. Maintain all testing equipment calibrated in accordance with pertinent test methods. Make strength-testing equipment available to the Engineer for verification testing.

Provide the Engineer the opportunity to witness all tests. The Engineer may require a retest if not given the opportunity to witness. Furnish a copy of all test results to the Engineer daily. Check the first few concrete loads for slump and temperature to verify concrete conformance and consistency on start-up production days. Sample and prepare strength-test specimens (2 specimens per test) on the first day of production and for each 3,000 sq. yd. or fraction thereof of concrete pavement thereafter. Prepare at least 1 set of strength-test specimens for each production day. Perform slump and temperature tests each time strength specimens are made. Monitor concrete temperature to ensure that concrete is consistently within the temperature requirements. The Engineer will direct random job-control sampling and testing. Immediately investigate and take corrective action as approved if any Contractor test result, including tests performed for verification purposes, does not meet specification requirements.

The Engineer will perform job-control testing when the testing by the Contractor is waived by the plans; however, this does not waive the Contractor's responsibility for providing materials and work in accordance with this Item.

4.2.1. **Job-Control Strength.** Use 7-day job-control concrete strength testing in accordance with Tex-448-A or Tex-418-A unless otherwise shown on the plans or permitted.

Use a compressive strength of 3,200 psi or a lower job-control strength value proven to meet a 28-day compressive strength of 4,000 psi as correlated in accordance with Tex-427-A for 7-day job-control by compressive strength. Use a flexural strength of 450 psi or a lower job-control strength value proven to meet a 28-day flexural strength of 570 psi as correlated in accordance with Tex-427-A for 7-day job-control by flexural strength.

Job control of concrete strength may be correlated to an age other than 7 days in accordance with Tex-427-A when approved. Job-control strength of Class HES concrete is based on the required strength and time.

Investigate the strength test procedures, the quality of materials, the concrete production operations, and other possible problem areas to determine the cause when a job-control concrete strength test value is more than 10% below the required job-control strength or when 3 consecutive job-control strength values fall below the required job-control strength. Take necessary action to correct the problem, including redesign of the concrete mix if needed. The Engineer may suspend concrete paving if the Contractor is unable to identify, document, and correct the cause of low-strength test values in a timely manner. The Engineer will evaluate the structural adequacy of the pavements if any job-control strength is more than 15% below the required job-control strength. Remove and replace pavements found to be structurally inadequate at no additional cost when directed.

4.2.2. **Split-Sample Verification Testing.** Perform split-sample verification testing with the Engineer on random samples taken and split by the Engineer at a rate of at least 1 for every 10 job-control samples. The Engineer will evaluate the results of split-sample verification testing. Immediately investigate and take corrective action as approved when results of split-sample verification testing differ more than the allowable differences shown in Table 1, or the average of 10 job-control strength results and the Engineer's split-sample strength result differ by more than 10%.

Table 1
Verification Testing Limits

Test Method	Allowable Differences
Temperature, Tex-422-A	2°F
Slump, Tex-415-A	1 in.
Flexural strength, Tex-448-A	19%
Compressive strength, Tex-418-A	10%

- 4.3. **Reinforcing Steel and Joint Assemblies.** Accurately place and secure in position all reinforcing steel as shown on the plans. Place dowels at mid-depth of the pavement slab, parallel to the surface. Place dowels for transverse contraction joints parallel to the pavement edge. Tolerances for location and alignment of dowels will be shown on the plans. Stagger the lap locations so that no more than 1/3 of the longitudinal steel is spliced in any given 12-ft. width and 2-ft. length of the pavement. Use multiple-piece tie bars, drill and epoxy grout tie bars, or, if approved, mechanically-inserted single-piece tie bars at longitudinal construction joints. Verify that tie bars that are drilled and epoxied or mechanically inserted into concrete at longitudinal construction joints develop a pullout resistance equal to a minimum of 3/4 of the yield strength of the steel after 7 days. Test 15 bars using ASTM E488, except that alternate approved equipment may be used. All 15 tested bars must meet the required pullout strength. Perform corrective measures to provide equivalent pullout resistance if any of the test results do not meet the required minimum pullout strength. Repair damage from testing. Acceptable corrective measures include but are not limited to installation of additional or longer tie bars.
- 4.3.1. **Manual Placement.** Secure reinforcing bars at alternate intersections with wire ties or locking support chairs. Tie all splices with wire.
- 4.3.2. **Mechanical Placement.** Complete the work using manual placement methods described above if mechanical placement of reinforcement results in steel misalignment or improper location, poor concrete consolidation, or other inadequacies.
- 4.4. **Joints.** Install joints as shown on the plans. Joint sealants are not required on concrete pavement that is to be overlaid with asphaltic materials. Clean and seal joints in accordance with Item 438, "Cleaning and Sealing Joints." Repair excessive spalling of the joint saw groove using an approved method before installing the sealant. Seal all joints before opening the pavement to all traffic. Install a rigid transverse bulkhead, for the reinforcing steel, and shaped accurately to the cross-section of the pavement when placing of concrete is stopped.
- 4.4.1. **Placing Reinforcement at Joints.** Complete and place the assembly of parts at pavement joints at the required location and elevation, with all parts rigidly secured in the required position, when shown on the plans.
- 4.4.2. **Transverse Construction Joints.**
- 4.4.2.1. **Continuously Reinforced Concrete Pavement (CRCP).** Install additional longitudinal reinforcement through the bulkhead when shown on the plans. Protect the reinforcing steel immediately beyond the construction joint from damage, vibration, and impact.
- 4.4.2.2. **Concrete Pavement Contraction Design (CPCD).** Install and rigidly secure a complete joint assembly and bulkhead in the planned transverse contraction joint location when the placing of concrete is intentionally stopped. Install a transverse construction joint either at a planned transverse contraction joint location or mid-slab between planned transverse contraction joints when the placing of concrete is unintentionally stopped. Install tie bars of the size and spacing used in the longitudinal joints for mid-slab construction joints.
- 4.4.2.3. **Curb Joints.** Provide joints in the curb of the same type and location as the adjacent pavement. Use expansion joint material of the same thickness, type, and quality required for the pavement and of the section shown for the curb. Extend expansion joints through the curb. Construct curb joints at all transverse pavement joints. Place reinforcing steel into the plastic concrete pavement for non-monolithic curbs as shown on the plans unless otherwise approved. Form or saw the weakened plane joint across the full width

of concrete pavement and through the monolithic curbs. Construct curb joints in accordance with Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."

- 4.5. **Placing and Removing Forms.** Use clean and oiled forms. Secure forms on a base or firm subgrade that is accurately graded and that provides stable support without deflection and movement by form riding equipment. Pin every form at least at the middle and near each end. Tightly join and key form sections together to prevent relative displacement.

Set side forms far enough in advance of concrete placement to permit inspection. Check conformity of the grade, alignment, and stability of forms immediately before placing concrete, and make all necessary corrections. Use a straightedge or other approved method to test the top of forms to ensure that the ride quality requirements for the completed pavement will be met. Stop paving operations if forms settle or deflect more than 1/8 in. under finishing operations. Reset forms to line and grade, and refinish the concrete surface to correct grade.

Avoid damage to the edge of the pavement when removing forms. Repair damage resulting from form removal and honeycombed areas with a mortar mix within 24 hr. after form removal unless otherwise approved. Clean joint face and repair honeycombed or damaged areas within 24 hr. after a bulkhead for a transverse construction joint has been removed unless otherwise approved. Promptly apply membrane curing compound to the edge of the concrete pavement when forms are removed before 72 hr. after concrete placement.

Forms that are not the same depth as the pavement, but are within 2 in. of that depth are permitted if the subbase is trenched or the full width and length of the form base is supported with a firm material to produce the required pavement thickness. Promptly repair the form trench after use. Use flexible or curved wood or metal forms for curves of 100-ft. radius or less.

- 4.6. **Concrete Delivery.** Clean delivery equipment as necessary to prevent accumulation of old concrete before loading fresh concrete. Use agitated delivery equipment for concrete designed to have a slump of more than 5 in. Segregated concrete is subject to rejection.

Begin the discharge of concrete delivered in agitated delivery equipment conforming to the requirements of Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Place non-agitated concrete within 45 min. after batching. Reduce times as directed when hot weather or other conditions cause quick setting of the concrete.

- 4.7. **Concrete Placement.** Do not allow the pavement edge to deviate from the established paving line by more than 1/2 in. at any point. Place the concrete as near as possible to its final location, and minimize segregation and rehandling. Distribute concrete using shovels where hand spreading is necessary. Do not use rakes or vibrators to distribute concrete.

- 4.7.1. **Consolidation.** Consolidate all concrete by approved mechanical vibrators operated on the front of the paving equipment. Use immersion-type vibrators that simultaneously consolidate the full width of the placement when machine finishing. Keep vibrators from dislodging reinforcement. Use hand-operated vibrators to consolidate concrete along forms, at all joints and in areas not accessible to the machine-mounted vibrators. Do not operate machine-mounted vibrators while the paving equipment is stationary. Vibrator operations are subject to review.

- 4.7.2. **Curbs.** Conform to the requirements of Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter" where curbs are placed separately.

- 4.7.3. **Temperature Restrictions.** Place concrete that is between 40°F and 95°F when measured in accordance with Tex-422-A at the time of discharge, except that concrete may be used if it was already in transit when the temperature was found to exceed the allowable maximum. Take immediate corrective action or cease concrete production when the concrete temperature exceeds 95°F.

Do not place concrete when the ambient temperature in the shade is below 40°F and falling unless approved. Concrete may be placed when the ambient temperature in the shade is above 35°F and rising or

above 40°F. Protect the pavement with an approved insulating material capable of protecting the concrete for the specified curing period when temperatures warrant protection against freezing. Submit for approval proposed measures to protect the concrete from anticipated freezing weather for the first 72 hr. after placement. Repair or replace all concrete damaged by freezing.

- 4.8. **Spreading and Finishing.** Finish all concrete pavement with approved self-propelled equipment. Use power-driven spreaders, power-driven vibrators, power-driven strike-off, screed, or approved alternate equipment. Use the transverse finishing equipment to compact and strike-off the concrete to the required section and grade without surface voids. Use float equipment for final finishing. Use concrete with a consistency that allows completion of all finishing operations without addition of water to the surface. Use the minimal amount of water fog mist necessary to maintain a moist surface. Reduce fogging if float or straightedge operations result in excess slurry.
- 4.8.1. **Finished Surface.** Perform sufficient checks with long-handled 10-ft. and 15-ft. straightedges on the plastic concrete to ensure the final surface is within the tolerances specified in Surface Test A in Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces." Check with the straightedge parallel to the centerline.
- 4.8.2. **Maintenance of Surface Moisture.** Prevent surface drying of the pavement before application of the curing system by means that may include water fogging, the use of wind screens, and the use of evaporation retardants. Apply evaporation retardant at the manufacturer's recommended rate. Reapply the evaporation retardant as needed to maintain the concrete surface in a moist condition until curing system is applied. Do not use evaporation retardant as a finishing aid. Failure to take acceptable precautions to prevent surface drying of the pavement will be cause for shutdown of pavement operations.
- 4.8.3. **Surface Texturing.** Complete final texturing before the concrete has attained its initial set. Drag the carpet longitudinally along the pavement surface with the carpet contact surface area adjusted to provide a satisfactory coarsely textured surface. Prevent the carpet from getting plugged with grout. Do not perform carpet dragging operations while there is excessive bleed water.

A metal-tine texture finish is required unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide transverse tining unless otherwise shown on the plans. Immediately following the carpet drag, apply a single coat of evaporation retardant, if needed, at the rate recommended by the manufacturer. Provide the metal-tine finish immediately after the concrete surface has set enough for consistent tining. Operate the metal-tine device to obtain grooves approximately 3/16 in. deep, with a minimum depth of 1/8 in., and approximately 1/12 in. wide. Do not overlap a previously tined area. Use manual methods to achieve similar results on ramps, small or irregular areas, and narrow width sections of pavements. Repair damage to the edge of the slab and joints immediately after texturing. Do not tine pavement that will be overlaid or that is scheduled for blanket diamond grinding or shot blasting.

Target a carpet drag texture of 0.04 in., as measured by Tex-436-A, when carpet drag is the only surface texture required on the plans. Ensure adequate and consistent macro-texture is achieved by applying enough weight to the carpet and by keeping the carpet from getting plugged with grout. Correct any location with a texture less than 0.03 in. by diamond grinding or shot blasting. The Engineer will determine the test locations at points located transversely to the direction of traffic in the outside wheel path.

- 4.8.4. **Small, Irregular Area, or Narrow Width Placements.** Use hand equipment and procedures that produce a consolidated and finished pavement section to the line and grade where machine placements and finishing of concrete pavement are not practical.
- 4.8.5. **Emergency Procedures.** Use hand-operated equipment for applying texture, evaporation retardant, and cure in the event of equipment breakdown.
- 4.9. **Curing.** Keep the concrete pavement surface from drying as described in Section 360.4.8.2., "Maintenance of Surface Moisture," until the curing material has been applied. Maintain and promptly repair damage to curing materials on exposed surfaces of concrete pavement continuously for at least 3 curing days. A curing day is defined as a 24-hr. period when either the temperature taken in the shade away from artificial heat is above 50°F for at least 19 hr. or the surface temperature of the concrete is maintained above 40°F for 24 hr.

Curing begins when the concrete curing system has been applied. Stop concrete paving if curing compound is not being applied promptly and maintained adequately. Other methods of curing in accordance with Item 422, "Concrete Superstructures," may be used when specified or approved.

- 4.9.1. **Membrane Curing.** Spray the concrete surface uniformly with 2 coats of membrane curing compound at an individual application rate of no more than 180 sq. ft. per gallon. Apply the curing compound before allowing the concrete surface to dry.

Manage finishing and texturing operations to ensure placement of curing compound on a moist concrete surface, relatively free of bleed water, to prevent any plastic shrinkage cracking. Time the application of curing compound to prevent plastic shrinkage cracking.

Maintain curing compounds in a uniformly agitated condition, free of settlement before and during application. Do not thin or dilute the curing compound.

Apply additional compound at the same rate of coverage to correct damage where the coating shows discontinuities or other defects or if rain falls on the newly coated surface before the film has dried enough to resist damage. Ensure that the curing compound coats the sides of the tining grooves.

- 4.9.2. **Asphalt Curing.** Apply a uniform coating of asphalt curing at a rate of 90 to 180 sq. ft. per gallon when an asphaltic concrete overlay is required. Apply curing immediately after texturing and once the free moisture (sheen) has disappeared. Obtain approval to add water to the emulsion to improve spray distribution. Maintain the asphalt application rate when using diluted emulsions. Maintain the emulsion in a mixed condition during application.

- 4.9.3. **Curing Class HES Concrete.** Provide membrane curing in accordance with Section 360.4.9.1., "Membrane Curing," for all Class HES concrete pavement. Promptly follow by wet mat curing in accordance with Section 422.4.8., "Final Curing," until opening strength is achieved but not less than 24 hr.

- 4.9.4. **Curing Fast-Track Concrete.** Provide wet mat curing unless otherwise shown on the plans or as directed. Cure in accordance with Section 422.4.8., "Final Curing." Apply a Type 1-D or Type 2 membrane cure instead of wet mat curing if the air temperature is below 65°F and insulating blankets are used.

- 4.10. **Sawing Joints.** Saw joints to the depth shown on the plans as soon as sawing can be accomplished without damage to the pavement regardless of time of day or weather conditions. Some minor raveling of the saw-cut is acceptable. Use a chalk line, string line, sawing template, or other approved method to provide a true joint alignment. Provide enough saws to match the paving production rate to ensure sawing completion at the earliest possible time to avoid uncontrolled cracking. Reduce paving production if necessary to ensure timely sawing of joints. Promptly restore membrane cure damaged within the first 72 hr. of curing.

- 4.11. **Protection of Pavement and Opening to Traffic.** Testing for early opening is the responsibility of the Contractor regardless of job-control testing responsibilities unless otherwise shown on the plans or as directed. Testing result interpretation for opening to traffic is subject to approval.

- 4.11.1. **Protection of Pavement.** Erect and maintain barricades and other standard and approved devices that will exclude all vehicles and equipment from the newly placed pavement for the periods specified. Protect the pavement from damage due to crossings using approved methods before opening to traffic. Where a detour is not readily available or economically feasible, an occasional crossing of the roadway with overweight equipment may be permitted for relocating equipment only but not for hauling material. When an occasional crossing of overweight equipment is permitted, temporary matting or other approved methods may be required.

Maintain an adequate supply of sheeting or other material to cover and protect fresh concrete surface from weather damage. Apply as needed to protect the pavement surface from weather.

- 4.11.2. **Opening Pavement to All Traffic.** Pavement that is 7 days old may be opened to all traffic. Clean pavement, place stable material against the pavement edges, seal joints, and perform all other traffic safety related work before opening to traffic.
- 4.11.3. **Opening Pavement to Construction Equipment.** Unless otherwise shown on the plans, concrete pavement may be opened early to concrete paving equipment and related delivery equipment after the concrete is at least 48 hr. old and opening strength has been demonstrated in accordance with Section 360.4.11.4., “Early Opening to All Traffic,” before curing is complete. Keep delivery equipment at least 2 ft. from the edge of the concrete pavement. Keep tracks of the paving equipment at least 1 ft. from the pavement edge. Protect textured surfaces from the paving equipment. Restore damaged membrane curing as soon as possible. Repair pavement damaged by paving or delivery equipment before opening to all traffic.
- 4.11.4. **Early Opening to All Traffic.** Concrete pavement may be opened after curing is complete and the concrete has attained a flexural strength of 450 psi or a compressive strength of 3,200 psi, except that pavement using Class HES concrete may be opened after 24 hr. if the specified strength is achieved.
- 4.11.4.1. **Strength Testing.** Test concrete specimens cured under the same conditions as the portion of the pavement involved.
- 4.11.4.2. **Maturity Method.** Use the maturity method, Tex-426-A, to estimate concrete strength for early opening pavement to traffic unless otherwise shown on the plans. Install at least 2 maturity sensors for each day’s placement in areas where the maturity method will be used for early opening. Maturity sensors, when used, will be installed near the day’s final placement for areas being evaluated for early opening. Use test specimens to verify the strength–maturity relationship in accordance with Tex-426-A, starting with the first day’s placement corresponding to the early opening pavement section.
- Verify the strength–maturity relationship at least every 10 days of production after the first day. Establish a new strength–maturity relationship when the strength specimens deviate more than 10% from the maturity-estimated strengths. Suspend use of the maturity method for opening pavements to traffic when the strength–maturity relationship deviates by more than 10% until a new strength–maturity relationship is established.
- The Engineer will determine the frequency of verification when the maturity method is used intermittently or for only specific areas.
- 4.11.5. **Fast Track Concrete Pavement.** Open the pavement after the concrete has been cured for at least 8 hr. and attained a minimum compressive strength of 1,800 psi or a minimum flexural strength of 255 psi when tested in accordance with Section 360.4.11.4.1., “Strength Testing,” or Section 360.4.11.4.2., “Maturity Method,” unless otherwise directed. Cover the pavement with insulating blankets when the air temperature is below 65°F until the pavement is opened to traffic.
- 4.11.6. **Emergency Opening to Traffic.** Open the pavement to traffic under emergency conditions, when the pavement is at least 72 hr. old when directed in writing. Remove all obstructing materials, place stable material against the pavement edges, and perform other work involved in providing for the safety of traffic as required for emergency opening.
- 4.12. **Pavement Thickness.** The Engineer will check the thickness in accordance with Tex-423-A unless other methods are shown on the plans. The Engineer will perform 1 thickness test consisting of 1 reading at approximately the center of each lane every 500 ft. or fraction thereof. Core where directed, in accordance with Tex-424-A, to verify deficiencies of more than 0.2 in. from plan thickness and to determine the limits of deficiencies of more than 0.75 in. from plan thickness. Fill core holes using an approved concrete mixture and method.
- 4.12.1. **Thickness Deficiencies Greater than 0.2 in.** Take one 4-in. diameter core at that location to verify the measurement when any depth test measured in accordance with Tex-423-A is deficient by more than 0.2 in. from the plan thickness.

Take 2 additional cores from the unit (as defined in Section 360.4.12.3., "Pavement Units for Payment Adjustment") at intervals of at least 150 ft. and at selected locations if the core is deficient by more than 0.2 in., but not by more than 0.75 in. from the plan thickness, and determine the thickness of the unit for payment purposes by averaging the length of the 3 cores. In calculations of the average thickness of this unit of pavement, measurements in excess of the specified thickness by more than 0.2 in. will be considered as the specified thickness plus 0.2 in.

- 4.12.2. **Thickness Deficiencies Greater than 0.75 in.** Take additional cores at 10-ft. intervals in each direction parallel to the centerline to determine the boundary of the deficient area if a core is deficient by more than 0.75 in. The Engineer will evaluate any area of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 0.75 in., but not more than 1 in. Remove and replace the deficient areas without additional compensation or retain deficient areas without compensation, as directed. Remove and replace any area of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 1 in. without additional compensation.
- 4.12.3. **Pavement Units for Payment Adjustment.** Limits for applying a payment adjustment for deficient pavement thickness from 0.20 in. to not more than 0.75 in. are 500 ft. of pavement in each lane. Lane width will be as shown on typical sections and pavement design standards.

For greater than 0.75 in. deficient thickness, the limits for applying zero payment or requiring removal will be defined by coring or equivalent nondestructive means as determined by the Engineer. The remaining portion of the unit determined to be less than 0.75 in. deficient will be subject to the payment adjustment based on the average core thickness at each end of the 10-ft. interval investigation as determined by the Engineer.

Shoulders will be measured for thickness unless otherwise shown on the plans. Shoulders 6 ft. wide or wider will be considered as lanes. Shoulders less than 6 ft. wide will be considered part of the adjacent lane.

Limits for applying payment adjustment for deficient pavement thickness for ramps, widenings, acceleration and deceleration lanes, and other miscellaneous areas are 500 ft. in length. Areas less than 500 ft. in length will be individually evaluated for payment adjustment based on the plan area.

- 4.13. **Ride Quality.** Measure ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

5. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured as follows:

- 5.1. **Concrete Pavement.** Concrete pavement will be measured by the square yard of surface area in place. The surface area includes the portion of the pavement slab extending beneath the curb.
- 5.2. **Curb.** Curb on concrete pavement will be measured by the foot in place.

6. PAYMENT

These prices are full compensation for materials, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

- 6.1. **Concrete Pavement.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the adjusted unit price bid for "Concrete Pavement" of the type and depth specified as adjusted in accordance with Section 360.6.2., "Deficient Thickness Adjustment."
- 6.2. **Deficient Thickness Adjustment.** Where the average thickness of pavement is deficient in thickness by more than 0.2 in. but not more than 0.75 in., payment will be made using the adjustment factor as specified in Table 2 applied to the bid price for the deficient area for each unit as defined under Section 360.4.12.3., "Pavement Units for Payment Adjustment."

Table 2
Deficient Thickness Price Adjustment Factor

Deficiency in Thickness Determined by Cores (in.)	Proportional Part of Contract Price Allowed (Adjustment Factor)
Not deficient	1.00
Over 0.00 through 0.20	1.00
Over 0.20 through 0.30	0.80
Over 0.30 through 0.40	0.72
Over 0.40 through 0.50	0.68
Over 0.50 through 0.75	0.57

- 6.3. **Curb.** Work performed and furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Curb" of the type specified.

Item 400

Excavation and Backfill for Structures



1. DESCRIPTION

Excavate for placement and construction of structures and backfill structures. Cut and restore pavement.

2. MATERIALS

Use materials that meet the requirements of the following Items.

- Item 401, "Flowable Backfill,"
- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," and
- DMS-4600, "Hydraulic Cement."

3. CONSTRUCTION

3.1. Excavation.

- 3.1.1. **General.** Excavate to the lines and grades shown on the plans or as directed. Provide slopes, benching, sheeting, bracing, pumping, and bailing as necessary to maintain the stability and safety of excavations up to 5 ft. deep. Excavation protection for excavations deeper than 5 ft. are governed by Item 402, "Trench Excavation Protection," and Item 403, "Temporary Special Shoring." Use satisfactory excavated material as backfill or as embankment fill in accordance with Item 132, "Embankment." Dispose of material not incorporated into the final project off the right of way in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations.

Keep any topsoil that has been removed separate, and replace it, as nearly as feasible, in its original position when excavating for installation of structures across private property or beyond the limits of the embankment. Restore the area to an acceptable condition.

Excavate drilled shafts in accordance with Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations."

- 3.1.1.1. **Obstructions.** Remove obstructions to the proposed construction, including trees and other vegetation, debris, and structures, over the width of the excavation to a depth of 1 ft. below the bottom of excavation. Remove as required to clear the new structure and plug in an approved manner if abandoned storm drains, sewers, or other drainage systems are encountered. Restore the bottom of the excavation to grade by backfilling after removing obstructions in accordance with this Item. Dispose of surplus materials in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations.

- 3.1.1.2. **Excavation in Streets.** Cut pavement and base to neat lines when structures are installed in streets, highways, or other paved areas. Restore pavement structure after completion of excavation and backfilling.

Maintain and control traffic in accordance with the approved traffic control plan and the TMUTCD.

- 3.1.1.3. **Utilities.** Comply with the requirements of Article 7.15., "Responsibility for Damage Claims." Conduct work with minimum disturbance of existing utilities, and coordinate work in or near utilities with the utility owners. Inform utility owners before work begins, allowing them enough time to identify, locate, reroute, or make other adjustments to utility lines.

Avoid cutting or damaging underground utility lines that are to remain in place. Promptly notify the utility company if damage occurs. Provide temporary flumes across the excavation while open if an active sanitary

sewer line is damaged during excavation, and restore the lines when backfilling has progressed to the original bedding lines of the cut sewer.

- 3.1.1.4. **De-Watering.** Construct or place structures in the presence of water only if approved. Place precast members, pipe, and concrete only on a dry, firm surface. Remove water by bailing, pumping, well-point installation, deep wells, underdrains, or other approved method.

Remove standing water in a manner that does not allow water movement through or alongside concrete being placed if structures are approved for placement in the presence of water. Pump or bail only from a suitable sump separated from the concrete work while placing structural concrete or for a period of at least 36 hr. thereafter. Pump or bail during placement of seal concrete only to the extent necessary to maintain a static head of water within the cofferdam. Pump or bail to de-water inside a sealed cofferdam only after the seal has aged at least 36 hr.

Place a stabilizing material in the bottom of the excavation if the bottom of an excavation cannot be de-watered to the point the subgrade is free of mud or it is difficult to keep reinforcing steel clean. Use flexible base, cement-stabilized base or backfill, lean concrete, or other approved stabilizing material. Provide concrete with at least 275 lb. of cement per cubic yard, if lean concrete is used, and place to a minimum depth of 3 in. Stabilizing material placed for the convenience of the Contractor will be at the Contractor's expense.

- 3.1.2. **Bridge Foundations and Retaining Walls.** Do not disturb material below the bottom of footing grade. Do not backfill to compensate for excavation that has extended below grade. Fill the area with concrete at the time the footing is placed if excavation occurs below the proposed footing grade. Additional concrete placed will be at the Contractor's expense.

Take core samples to determine the character of the supporting materials if requested. Provide an intact sample adequate to judge the character of the founding material. Take these cores when the excavation is close to completion. Cores should be approximately 5 ft. deeper than the proposed founding grade.

Remove loose material if the founding stratum is rock or another hard material, and clean and cut it to a firm surface that is level, stepped, or serrated, as directed. Clean out soft seams, and fill with concrete at the time the footing is placed.

Place the foundation once the Engineer has inspected the excavation and authorized changes have been made to provide a uniform bearing condition if the material at the footing grade of a retaining wall, bridge bent, or pier is a mixture of compressible and incompressible material.

- 3.1.3. **Cofferdams.** The term "cofferdam" designates any temporary or removable structure constructed to hold surrounding earth, water, or both out of the excavation whether the structure is formed of soil, timber, steel, concrete, or a combination of these. Use pumping wells or well points for de-watering cofferdams if required.

Submit details and design calculations for sheet-pile or other types of cofferdams requiring structural members bearing the seal of a licensed professional engineer for review before constructing the cofferdam. The Department reserves the right to reject designs. Design structural systems to comply with the AASHTO *Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges* or AASHTO LRFD *Bridge Design Specifications*. Interior dimensions of cofferdams must provide enough clearance for the construction, inspection, and removal of required forms and, if necessary, enough room to allow pumping outside the forms. Extend sheet-pile cofferdams well below the bottom of the footings, and make concrete seals as well braced and watertight as practicable.

Use Class E concrete for foundation seals unless otherwise specified. Place concrete foundation seals in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete Substructures." Seals placed for the convenience of the Contractor will be at the Contractor's expense.

Make the excavation deep enough to allow for swelling of the material at the base of the excavation during pile-driving operations when the Engineer judges it to be impractical to de-water inside a cofferdam and a

concrete seal is to be placed around piling driven within the cofferdam. Remove swelling material to the bottom of the seal grade after driving the piling. Remove the foundation material to exact footing grades where it is possible to de-water inside the cofferdam without placing a seal after driving piling. Do not backfill a foundation to compensate for excavation that has been extended below grade; fill such areas below grade with concrete at the time the seals or footings are placed.

Remove cofferdams after completing the substructure without disturbing or damaging the structure unless otherwise provided.

- 3.1.4. **Culverts and Storm Drains.** When the design requires special bedding conditions for culverts or storm drains, an excavation diagram will be shown on the plans. Do not exceed these limits of excavation.

Construct pipe structures in an open cut with vertical sides extending to a point 1 ft. above the pipe unless otherwise shown on the plans. When site conditions or the plans do not prohibit sloping the cut, the excavation may be stepped or laid back to a stable slope beginning 1 ft. above the pipe. Maintain the stability of the excavation throughout the construction period.

Construct the embankment for pipe to be installed in fill above natural ground to an elevation at least 1 ft. above the top of the pipe, and then excavate for the pipe.

- 3.1.4.1. **Unstable Material.** Remove the material to a depth of no more than 2 ft. below the grade of the structure when unstable soil is encountered at established footing grade, unless the Engineer authorizes additional depth. Replace soil removed with stable material in uniform layers no greater than 8 in. deep (loose measurement). Each layer must have enough moisture to be compacted by rolling or tamping as required to provide a stable foundation for the structure.

Use special materials such as flexible base, cement-stabilized base, cement-stabilized backfill, or other approved material when it is not feasible to construct a stable foundation as outlined above.

- 3.1.4.2. **Incompressible Material.** Remove the incompressible material to 6 in. below the footing grade, backfill with an approved compressible material, and compact in accordance with Section 400.3.3., "Backfill," if rock, part rock, or other incompressible material is encountered at established footing grade while placing prefabricated elements.

- 3.2. **Shaping and Bedding.** Place at least 2 in. of fine granular material for precast box sections on the base of the excavation before placing the box sections. Use bedding as shown in Figure 1 for pipe installations. Use Class C bedding unless otherwise shown on the plans. The Engineer may require the use of a template to secure reasonably accurate shaping of the foundation material. Undercut the excavation at least 4 in. where cement-stabilized backfill is indicated on the plans and backfill with stabilized material to support the pipe or box at the required grade.

B_c - Outside diameter or horizontal dimension
 D - Inside diameter of pipe
 d - Min. bedding material below pipe

D	d
≤ 27"	3"
30" to 60"	4"
≥ 66"	6"

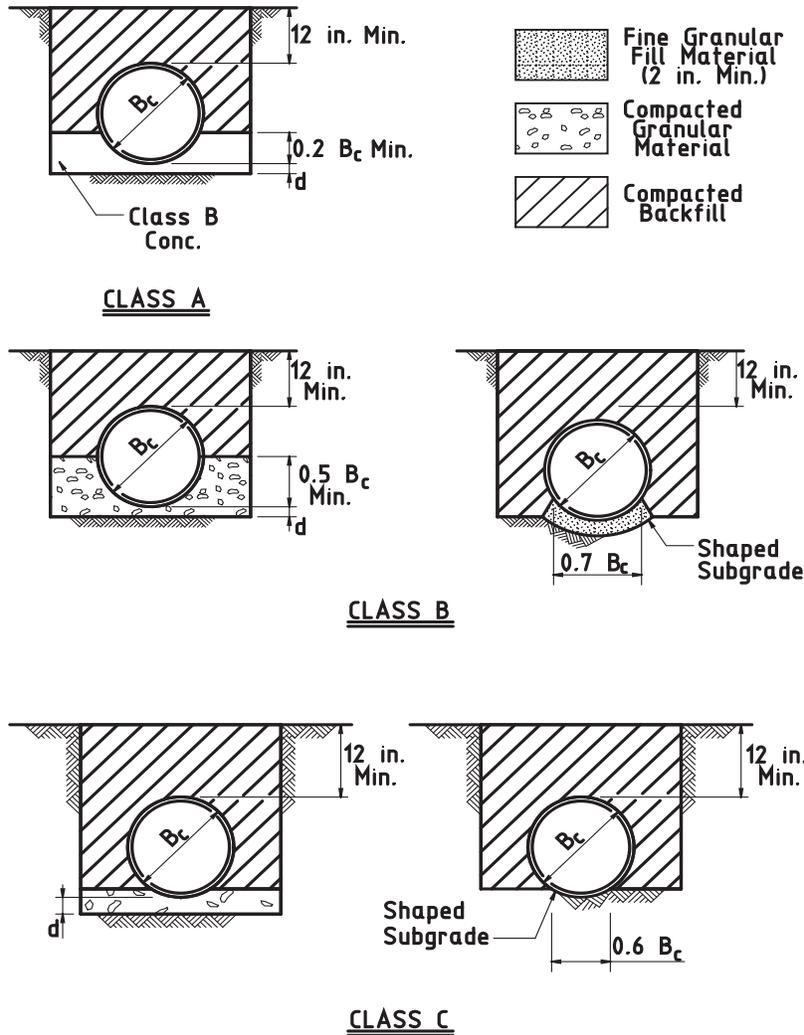


Figure 1
 Bedding Diagrams

3.3. **Backfill.**

3.3.1. **General.** Backfill the excavation after placement of the permanent structure as soon as practical. Use backfill free from stones large enough to interfere with compaction; large or frozen lumps that will not break down readily under compaction; and wood or other extraneous material. Obtain backfill material from excavation or from other sources.

Place backfill in layers no greater than 10 in. deep (loose measurement) in areas not supporting a completed roadbed, retaining wall, or embankment. Place backfill in uniform layers no greater than 8 in. deep (loose measurement) in areas supporting a portion of a roadbed, retaining wall, or embankment. Compact each layer to meet the density requirements of the roadbed, retaining wall, embankment material, or as shown on the plans.

Bring each layer of backfill material to the moisture content needed to obtain the required density. Use mechanical tamps or rammers to compact the backfill. Rollers may be used to compact backfill if feasible.

Cohesionless materials may be used for backfilling. Use cohesionless materials that conform to the requirements of Table 1.

Table 1
Cohesionless Material Gradation Limits

Sieve Size	Percent Retained
3"	0
#10	See Note ¹
#200	90–100

- No. 10 sieve requirements are 0 to 30% retained when used as aggregate for cement-stabilized backfill.

Compact cohesionless materials using vibratory equipment, water-ponding, or a combination of both.

- 3.3.2. **Bridge Foundations, Retaining Walls, Manholes/Inlets, and Box Culverts.** Place backfill against the structure only after the concrete has reached the design strength required in Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete."

Backfill retaining walls with material meeting the requirements of Item 423, "Retaining Walls." Backfill around bridge foundations, manholes/inlets and culverts using material with particles no more than 4 in. in greatest dimension and a gradation that permits thorough compaction. Use rock or gravel mixed with soil if the percentage of fines is enough to fill all voids and ensure a uniform and thoroughly compacted mass of proper density.

Use mechanical tamps and rammers to avoid damage to the structure where backfill material is being placed too close to the structure to permit compaction with blading and rolling equipment.

Avoid wedging action of backfill against structures. Step or serrate slopes bounding the excavation to prevent such action. Place backfill uniformly around bridge foundations. Place backfill equally and in uniform layers along both sides of manholes/inlets and culverts.

The Engineer may require backfilling of structures excavated into hard, erosion-resistant material, and subject to erosive forces, with stone or lean concrete.

Box culverts may be opened to traffic as soon as enough backfill and embankment has been placed over the top to protect culverts against damage from heavy construction equipment. Repair damage to culvert caused by construction traffic at no additional expense to the Department.

- 3.3.3. **Pipe.** Bring backfill material to the proper moisture condition after installing bedding and pipe as required and place it equally along both sides of the pipe in uniform layers no greater than 8 in. deep (loose measurement). Compact each lift mechanically. Thoroughly compact materials placed under the haunches of the pipe to prevent damage or displacement of the pipe. Place backfill in this manner to the top-of-pipe elevation. Place and compact backfill above the top of the pipe in accordance with Section 400.3.3.1., "General."

The Engineer may reject backfill material containing more than 20% by weight of material retained on a 3 in. sieve with large lumps not easily broken down or that cannot be spread in loose layers. Material excavated by a trenching machine will generally meet the requirements of this Section as long as large stones are not present.

Place and compact additional material where pipe extends beyond the toe of slope of the embankment and the depth of cover provided by backfill to the original ground level is less than the minimum required by the specifications for the type of pipe involved until the minimum cover has been provided.

- 3.3.4. **Cement-Stabilized Backfill.** Backfill the excavation to the elevations shown with cement-stabilized backfill when shown on the plans. Use cement-stabilized backfill that contains aggregate conforming to the gradation limits shown in Table 1, water, and a minimum of 7% hydraulic cement based on the dry weight of the aggregate, in accordance with Tex-120-E.

Place cement-stabilized backfill equally along the sides of structures to prevent strain on or displacement of the structure. Fill voids when placing cement-stabilized backfill. Use hand-operated tampers if necessary to fill voids.

- 3.3.5. **Flowable Backfill.** Backfill the excavation with flowable backfill to the elevations indicated when shown on the plans. Prevent the structure from being displaced during the placement of the flowable fill, and prevent flowable fill from entering manholes/inlets and culverts, and drainage structures.

4. MEASUREMENT

This is a plans quantity measurement item. The quantity to be paid is the quantity shown in the proposal, unless modified by Article 9.2., "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

- 4.1. **Structural Excavation.** Unless shown on the plans as a pay item, structural excavation quantities shown are for information purposes only.

When structural excavation is specified as a pay item, structural excavation for pipe headwalls, inlets, manholes, culvert or storm drain extensions less than 15 ft. long, bridge abutments, retaining walls, and side road and private entrance pipe culverts will not be measured. No allowance will be made for variance from plans quantity incurred by an alternate bid.

When specified as a pay item, structural excavation will be measured by the cubic yard as computed by the average end areas method. Excavation diagrams on the plans take precedence over the provisions of this Article.

- 4.1.1. **Boundaries of Measurement.**

- 4.1.1.1. **Pipe.**

- 4.1.1.1.1. **Pipe up to 42 Inches.** For pipe up to 42 in. nominal or equivalent diameter, no material outside of vertical planes 1 ft. beyond and parallel to the horizontal projection of the outside surfaces of the pipe will be included.

- 4.1.1.1.2. **Pipe Larger than 42 Inches.** For pipes larger than 42 in. nominal or equivalent diameter, no material outside of vertical planes located 2 ft. beyond and parallel to the horizontal projection of the outside surfaces of the pipe will be included.

Quantities for excavation in fill above natural ground include 1 ft. above the top of the pipe regardless of the height of completed fill. Excavation for pipe will be measured between the extreme ends of the completed structure including end appurtenances as shown on the plans and from centerline to centerline of inlets, manholes, etc.

- 4.1.1.2. **Structural Plate Structures.** No material outside of vertical planes 3 ft. beyond and parallel to the horizontal projection of the outside surfaces of the structure will be included. When the quality of the existing soil or embankment is less than that of the proposed backfill material, the limits of measurement will be extended to vertical planes located 1/2 of the span beyond the horizontal projection of the outside surfaces of the structure.

- 4.1.1.3. **Footings, Walls, Boxes, and Other Excavation.** No material outside of vertical planes 1 ft. beyond and parallel to the edges of the footings or outside walls will be included whether or not a cofferdam or shoring is

used. When plans provide the option of cast-in-place or precast boxes, measurement will be based on the cast-in-place option.

Where excavation in addition to that allowed for the footings is required for other portions of the structure, measurement for the additional excavation will be limited laterally by vertical planes 1 ft. beyond the face of the member and parallel to it, and vertically to a depth of 1 ft. below the bottom of the member.

- 4.1.1.4. **Excavation near Roadways and Channels.** At structure sites other than culverts and pipe excavations, the measurement of structural excavation will include only material below or outside the limits of the completed road or channel excavation. Roadway and channel excavation will be paid under Item 110, "Excavation." For culverts except side road and private entrance culverts, excavation within the limits of the structure and below or outside the limits of the completed roadway excavation will be measured as structural excavation.
- 4.1.2. **Falsework.** No measurement will be made for excavation necessary for placing forms or falsework that exceeds the limits given in Section 400.4.1.1., "Boundaries of Measurement."
- 4.1.3. **Swelling.** Measurement will not include materials removed below footing grades to compensate for anticipated swelling due to pile-driving, nor will it include material required to be removed due to swelling beyond the specified limits during pile-driving operations.
- 4.1.4. **Cave-Ins.** Measurement will not include additional volume caused by slips, slides, cave-ins, silting, or fill material resulting from the action of the elements or the Contractor's operation.
- 4.1.5. **Undercut.** Where rock or other incompressible or unstable material is undercut to provide a suitable foundation for pipe or box sections, such material below grade directed to be removed will be measured for payment.
- 4.1.6. **Grade Change.** Additional measurement will be made of the volume of excavation involved in the lowering or raising of the elevation of a footing, foundation, or structure unit, when such grade change is authorized.
- 4.2. **Cement-Stabilized Backfill.** Cement-stabilized backfill will be measured by the cubic yard as shown on the plans.
- 4.3. **Cutting and Restoring Pavement.** Cutting and restoring pavement will be measured by the square yard as shown on the plans. Excavation below pavement or base will be measured as structural excavation of the pertinent type.

5. PAYMENT

- 5.1. **Structural Excavation.** Unless specified as a pay item, structural excavation and backfill performed, and material furnished in accordance with this Item will not be paid for directly but are subsidiary to pertinent Items.

When structural excavation is specified as a pay item, the excavation and backfill work performed, and materials furnished will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Structural Excavation," "Structural Excavation (Box)," "Structural Excavation (Pipe)," and "Structural Excavation (Bridge)." This price includes concrete to compensate for excavation that has extended below grade for bridge foundations and retaining walls, and backfilling and compacting areas that were removed as part of structural excavation.

Cofferdams or other measures necessary for supporting excavations less than 5 ft. deep will not be measured or paid for directly but will be subsidiary to the Contract.

Foundation seal concrete for cofferdams, when required, will be paid for as provided in the pertinent Items. If no direct method of payment is provided in the Contract, the work will be measured and paid for in accordance with Article 9.7., "Payment for Extra Work and Force Account Method." Seal placed for the convenience of the Contractor will not be paid for.

Unless otherwise provided, stone or lean concrete backfill around structures as provided for in Section 400.3.3.2., "Bridge Foundations, Retaining Walls, Manholes/Inlets, and Box Culverts," will be measured and paid for as extra work in accordance with Article 9.7., "Payment for Extra Work and Force Account Method."

When structural excavation is specified as a pay item, a partial payment of 50% of the bid price will be made for structural excavation completed to the satisfaction of the Engineer but not backfilled. The remaining amount will be paid upon completion of backfilling. When the Contractor elects to excavate beyond plan requirements, no measurement will be made of the additional volume.

- 5.2. **Removal and Replacement of Unsuitable or Incompressible Material.** Removal and replacement of material will be paid for if directed. Removal and replacement of material or placement of special material made necessary by the softening of founding material due to the Contractor's sequence of work or operation, will be at the Contractor's expense. Special material used or additional excavation made for the Contractor's convenience will not be paid for.

- 5.2.1. **Structural Excavation as a Pay Item.** Where special materials are not required or specified, payment for the removal and replacement of unstable or incompressible material will be made at a price equal to 200% of the unit price bid per cubic yard for Structural Excavation. When the Contractor elects to remove and replace material deeper than directed, no measurement will be made on that portion below the directed elevation. This price is full compensation for removing the unstable or incompressible material; furnishing, hauling, placing, and compacting suitable replacement material; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

When the plans specify or when directed, the use of special materials such as flexible base, cement-stabilized base, cement-stabilized backfill, or other special material, payment for excavation below footing grades will be made at the unit price bid for Structural Excavation. Payment for furnishing, hauling, placing, and compacting the flexible base, cement-stabilized base, cement-stabilized backfill, or other special materials will be made at the unit price bid for these items in the Contract, or, if the required material is not a bid item, in accordance with Article 9.7., "Payment for Extra Work and Force Account Method."

- 5.2.2. **Structural Excavation Not a Pay Item.** Where special materials for backfill are not required or specified, payment for the authorized removal and replacement of unstable or incompressible material will be measured and paid for at \$15 per cubic yard of material removed. This price is full compensation for removing the unstable or incompressible material; furnishing, hauling, placing, and compacting suitable replacement material; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

When the plans specify or when directed, the use of special materials such as flexible base, cement-stabilized base, cement-stabilized backfill, or other special material, excavation below the footing grades will be paid for at \$10 per cubic yard. Payment for furnishing, hauling, placing, and compacting the flexible base, cement-stabilized base, cement-stabilized backfill, or other special materials will be made at the unit price bid for these items, or, if the required material is not a bid item, in accordance with Article 9.7., "Payment for Extra Work and Force Account Method."

- 5.3. **Lowering of a Structure Foundation.** If the Engineer requires a structure foundation to be lowered to an elevation below the grade shown on the plans, overexcavation will be paid in accordance with Table 2.

Table 2
Payment for Required Overexcavation

Variance of Revised Footing Grade from Plan Grade	Payment Terms	Variance of Revised Footing Grade from Plan Grade
	"Structural Excavation" is a Bid Item	"Structural Excavation" is not a Bid Item
Up to and including 5 ft.	Unit price equal to 115% of unit price bid for "Structural Excavation"	\$10 per cubic yard
Over 5 ft. up to 10 ft.	Unit price equal to 125% of unit price bid for "Structural Excavation"	\$12 per cubic yard
Over 10 ft.	In accordance with Article 9.7., "Payment for Extra Work and Force Account Method."	

- 5.4. **Cement-Stabilized Backfill.** Cement-stabilized backfill will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Cement-Stabilized Backfill."
- 5.5. **Cutting and Restoring Pavement.** Cutting and restoring pavement will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Cutting and Restoring Pavement" of the type specified.

Work done to repair damage to base or pavement incurred outside the limits shown on the plans, or the limits authorized, will not be measured for payment.

The unit prices bid are full compensation for excavation including removing obstructions and plugging drainage systems; bedding and backfilling including placing, sprinkling and compaction of material; soundings; cleaning and filling seams; constructing and removing cofferdams; de-watering, sheeting, or bracing excavations up to and including 5 ft. deep; pumps; drills; explosives; disposition of surplus material; cutting pavement and base to neat lines; and materials, hauling, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Flowable backfill will be paid for as provided in Item 401, "Flowable Backfill." Protection methods for open excavations deeper than 5 ft. will be measured and paid for as required under Item 402, "Trench Excavation Protection," or Item 403, "Temporary Special Shoring."

Item 421

Hydraulic Cement Concrete



1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish hydraulic cement concrete for concrete pavements, concrete structures, and other concrete construction.

2. MATERIALS

Use materials from prequalified sources listed on the Department website. Provide coarse and fine aggregates from sources listed in the Department's *Concrete Rated Source Quality Catalog* (CRSQC). Use materials from non-listed sources only when tested and approved by the Engineer before use. Allow 30 calendar days for the Engineer to sample, test, and report results for non-listed sources. Do not combine approved material with unapproved material.

2.1. **Cement.** Furnish cement conforming to DMS-4600, "Hydraulic Cement."

2.2. **Supplementary Cementing Materials (SCM).**

- **Fly Ash.** Furnish fly ash, ultra-fine fly ash (UFFA), and modified Class F fly ash (MFFA) conforming to DMS-4610, "Fly Ash."
- **Slag Cement.** Furnish Slag Cement conforming to DMS-4620, "Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag."
- **Silica Fume.** Furnish silica fume conforming to DMS-4630, "Silica Fume."
- **Metakaolin.** Furnish metakaolin conforming to DMS-4635, "Metakaolin."

2.3. **Cementitious Material.** Cementitious materials are the cement and supplementary cementing materials used in concrete.

2.4. **Chemical Admixtures.** Furnish admixtures conforming to DMS-4640, "Chemical Admixtures for Concrete."

2.5. **Water.** Furnish mixing and curing water that is free from oils, acids, organic matter, or other deleterious substances. Water from municipal supplies approved by the Texas Department of Health will not require testing. Provide test reports showing compliance with Table 1 before use when using water from other sources.

Water that is a blend of concrete wash water and other acceptable water sources, certified by the concrete producer as complying with the requirements of both Table 1 and Table 2, may be used as mix water. Test the blended water weekly for 4 weeks for compliance with Table 1 and Table 2 or provide previous test results. Then test every month for compliance. Provide water test results upon request.

Table 1
Chemical Limits for Mix Water

Contaminant	Test Method	Maximum Concentration (ppm or mg/L)
Chloride (Cl)	ASTM C114	500
Prestressed concrete Bridge decks & superstructure		500
All other concrete		1,000
Sulfate (SO ₄)	ASTM C114	2,000
Alkalies (Na ₂ O + 0.658K ₂ O)	ASTM C114	600
Total solids	ASTM C1603	50,000

Table 2
Acceptance Criteria for Questionable Water Supplies

Property	Test Method	Limits
Compressive strength, min % control at 7 days	ASTM C31, ASTM C39 ^{1,2}	90
Time of set, deviation from control, h:min.	ASTM C403	From 1:00 early to 1:30 later

1. Base comparisons on fixed proportions and the same volume of test water compared to the control mix using 100% potable water or distilled water.
2. Base comparisons on sets consisting of at least 2 standard specimens made from a composite sample.

Do not use mix water that has an adverse effect on the air-entraining agent, on any other chemical admixture, or on strength or time of set of the concrete. Use mixing and curing water free of iron and other impurities that may cause staining or discoloration when using white hydraulic cement.

2.6. Aggregate.

- 2.6.1. **Coarse Aggregate.** Provide coarse aggregate consisting of durable particles of gravel, crushed blast furnace slag, recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete, crushed stone, or combinations which are free from frozen material and from injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter, or other objectionable material, either free or as an adherent coating. Provide coarse aggregate of uniform quality throughout.

Provide coarse aggregate with the requirements listed in Table 3 unless otherwise shown on the plan.

Table 3
Coarse Aggregate Requirements

Description	Test Method	Limit
Weight of Clay Lumps, % Max	Tex-413-A	0.25
Weight of Shale, % Max		1.0
Weight of Laminate and Friable Particle, % Max		5.0
L.A. Abrasion Wear, % Max	Tex-410-A	40
5-Cycle Magnesium Sulfate Soundness, ^{1,2} non-air-entrained concrete, % Max	Tex-411-A	25
5-Cycle Magnesium Sulfate Soundness, ^{1,3} air-entrained concrete, % Max		18
Loss by Decantation, % Max	Tex-406-A	1.5

1. Recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete is not subject to 5-cycle magnesium sulfate soundness requirements.
2. Allowed when air-entrained concrete is used at the Contractor's option.
3. Only when air-entrained concrete is required by the plans.

Increase the loss by decantation limit to 3.0% for all classes of concrete and 5.0% for Class A, B, and P if the material finer than the No. 200 sieve is determined to be at least 85% calcium carbonate in accordance with Tex-406-A, Part III, in the case of coarse aggregates made primarily from crushing stone unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide test results upon request.

Provide coarse aggregate conforming to the gradation requirements shown in Table 4 when tested in accordance with Tex-401-A unless otherwise specified.

Table 4
Coarse Aggregate Gradation Chart

Aggregate Grade No. ¹	Maximum Nominal Size	Percent Passing on Each Sieve								
		2-1/2"	2"	1-1/2"	1"	3/4"	1/2"	3/8"	#4	#8
1	2"	100	80-100	50-85		20-40			0-10	
2	1-1/2"		100	95-100		35-70		10-30	0-10	
3	1-1/2"		100	95-100		60-90	25-60		0-10	
4 (57)	1"			100	95-100		25-60		0-10	0-5
5 (67)	3/4"				100	90-100		20-55	0-10	0-5
6 (7)	1/2"					100	90-100	40-70	0-15	0-5
7	3/8"						100	70-95	0-25	
8	3/8"						100	95-100	20-65	0-10

1. Corresponding ASTM C33 gradation shown in parentheses.

- 2.6.2. **Fine Aggregate.** Provide fine aggregate consisting of clean, hard, durable particles of natural, manufactured sand, recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete, slag, lightweight aggregate, or a combination thereof. Provide fine aggregate free from frozen material and from injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter, or other objectionable material.

Provide fine aggregates with the requirements in Table 5 unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Table 5
Fine Aggregate Requirements

Description	Test Method	Limit
Weight of Clay Lumps, % Max	Tex-413-A	0.50
Organic Impurities ¹	Tex-408-A	Color not darker than standard
Sand Equivalent	Tex-203-F	80
Fineness Modulus	Tex-402-A	2.3 to 3.1

1. Only when air-entrained concrete is specified.

Provide fine aggregate or combinations of aggregates conforming to the gradation requirements shown in Table 6 when tested in accordance with Tex-401-A unless otherwise specified.

Table 6
Fine Aggregate Gradation Chart (Grade 1)

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
3/8"	100
#4	95-100
#8	80-100
#16	50-85
#30	25-65
#50	10-35 ¹
#100	0-10
#200	0-3 ²

1. 6-35 when sand equivalent value is greater than 85.
2. 0-6 for manufactured sand.

- 2.6.3. **Intermediate Aggregate.** Provide intermediate aggregate consisting of clean, hard, durable particles of natural, manufactured sand, slag, recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete, lightweight aggregate, or a combination thereof when optimized aggregate gradation (OAG) concrete is specified or when used at the Contractor's option. Provide intermediate aggregate free from frozen material and injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter, or other objectionable material.

Provide intermediate aggregate with the requirements in Table 7.

Table 7
Intermediate Aggregate Requirements

Description	Test Method	Limit
Weight of Clay Lumps, % Max	Tex-413-A	0.50
L.A. Abrasion Wear, ¹ % Max	Tex-410-A	40
5-Cycle Magnesium Sulfate Soundness, ^{1,2,3} non-air-entrained concrete, % Max	Tex-411-A	25
5-Cycle Magnesium Sulfate Soundness, ^{1,2,4} air-entrained concrete, % Max		18
Organic Impurities ⁵	Tex-408-A	Color not darker than standard
Loss by Decantation, ¹ % Max	Tex-406-A	1.5

1. Only applies to the portion retained on the No. 4 sieve, if more than 30% of the intermediate aggregate is retained on the No. 4 sieve.
2. Recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete is not subject to 5-cycle magnesium sulfate soundness requirements.
3. Allowed when air-entrained concrete is used at the Contractor's option.
4. Only when air-entrained concrete is required by the plans.
5. Only applies to the portion passing the 3/8 in. sieve, if more than 30% of the intermediate aggregate is passing the 3/8 in. sieve.

For the portion retained on the No. 4 sieve, if more than 30% of the intermediate aggregate is retained on the No. 4 sieve, and in the case of aggregates made primarily from crushing stone, unless otherwise shown on the plans, the loss by decantation may be increased to 3.0% for all classes of concrete and 5.0% for Class A, B, and P if the material finer than the No. 200 sieve is determined to be at least 85% calcium carbonate in accordance with Tex-406-A, Part III. Provide test results upon request.

- 2.7. **Mortar and Grout.** Furnish pre-packaged grouts conforming to DMS-4675, "Cementitious Grouts and Mortars for Miscellaneous Applications," when specified for applications other than post-tension grouting.

Section 421.4.2.6., "Mix Design Options," does not apply for mortar and grout.

- 2.8. **Storage of Materials.**

- 2.8.1. **Cement and Supplementary Cementing Materials.** Store all cement and supplementary cementing materials in weatherproof enclosures that will protect them from dampness or absorption of moisture.

When permitted, small quantities of packaged cementitious material may be stored in the open, on a raised platform, and under waterproof covering for up to 48 hr.

- 2.8.2. **Aggregates.** Handle and store concrete aggregates in a manner that prevents contamination with foreign materials. Clear and level the sites for the stockpiles of all vegetation if the aggregates are stored on the ground and do not use the bottom 6-in. layer of aggregate without cleaning the aggregate before use.

Maintain separate stockpiles and prevent intermixing when conditions require the use of 2 or more grades of coarse aggregates. Separate the stockpiles using physical barriers where space is limited. Store aggregates from different sources in different stockpiles unless the Engineer authorizes pre-blending of the aggregates. Minimize segregation in stockpiles. Remix and test stockpiles when segregation is apparent.

Sprinkle stockpiles to control moisture and temperature as necessary. Maintain reasonably uniform moisture content in aggregate stockpiles.

- 2.8.3. **Chemical Admixtures.** Store admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and prevent admixtures from freezing.

3. EQUIPMENT

- 3.1. **Concrete Plants and Mixing Equipment.** Except for volumetric stationary plant or truck (auger) mixers, each plant and truck mixer must be currently certified by the National Ready Mixed Concrete Association (NRMCA) or have an inspection report signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer showing concrete measuring, mixing, and delivery equipment meets all requirements of ASTM C94. A new certification or signed and sealed report is required every time a plant is moved. Plants with a licensed professional engineer's inspection require re-inspection every 2 yr. Provide a copy of the certification or the

signed and sealed inspection report to the Engineer. Remove equipment or facilities from service until corrected when they fail to meet specification requirements.

When allowed on the plans or by the Engineer, for concrete classes not identified as structural concrete in Table 8 or for Class C concrete not used for bridge-class structures, the Engineer may inspect and approve all plants and trucks instead of the NRMCA or non-Department engineer-sealed certifications. The criteria and frequency of Engineer approval of plants and trucks is the same used for NRMCA certification.

Inspect and furnish inspection reports on the condition of blades and fins and their percent wear from the original manufacturer's design for truck mixers and agitators annually. Repair mixing equipment exhibiting 10% or more wear before use. If an inspection within 12 mo. is not practical, a 2-mo. grace period (for a maximum of 14 mo. between inspections) is permitted.

3.1.1. **Scales.** Check all scales before beginning of operations, after each move, or whenever their accuracy or adequacy is questioned, and at least once every 6 mo. Immediately correct deficiencies, and recalibrate. Provide a record of calibration showing scales in compliance with ASTM C94 requirements. Check batching accuracy of volumetric water batching devices at least every 90 days. Check batching accuracy of chemical admixture dispensing devices at least every 6 mo. Perform daily checks as necessary to ensure measuring accuracy.

3.1.2. **Volumetric Mixers.** Provide volumetric mixers with rating plates defining the capacity and the performance of the mixer in accordance with the Volumetric Mixer Manufacturers Bureau or equivalent. Provide volumetric mixers that comply with ASTM C685. Provide test data showing mixers meet the uniformity test requirements of Tex-472-A.

Unless allowed on the plans or by the Engineer, volumetric truck (auger) mixers may not supply classes of concrete identified as structural concrete in Table 8.

3.1.3. **Agitators and Truck and Stationary Mixers.** Provide stationary and truck mixers capable of combining the ingredients of the concrete into a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass and capable of discharging the concrete so at least 5 of the 6 requirements of Tex-472-A are met.

Perform concrete uniformity tests on mixers or agitators in accordance with Tex-472-A as directed, to resolve issues of mix uniformity and mixer performance.

Perform the mixer or agitator uniformity test at the full rated capacity of the equipment. Remove all equipment that fails the uniformity test from service.

Inspect and maintain mixers and agitators. Keep them free of concrete buildup, and repair or replace worn or damaged blades or fins.

Ensure all mixers have a plate affixed showing manufacturer's recommended operating speed and rated capacity for mixing and agitating.

3.2. **Hauling Equipment.** Provide hauling equipment capable of maintaining the mixed concrete in a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass, and discharging the concrete with a satisfactory degree of uniformity.

Provide equipment with smooth, mortar-tight metal containers equipped with gates that prevent accidental discharge of the concrete when using non-agitating equipment for transporting concrete.

Maintain hauling equipment clean and free of built-up concrete.

3.3. **Testing Equipment.** Furnish and maintain the following in accordance with the pertinent test procedure unless otherwise shown on the plans or specified:

- sieves necessary to perform aggregate gradation analysis when optimized aggregate gradation is specified,

- equipment necessary to perform Tex-415-A and Tex-422-A,
- equipment necessary to perform Tex-409-A or Tex-425-A,
- test molds,
- curing facilities,
- maturity meters if used, and
- wheelbarrow or other container acceptable for the sampling of the concrete.

Provide strength-testing equipment when required in accordance with the Contract-controlling test unless shown otherwise.

4. CONSTRUCTION

- 4.1. **Classification of Concrete Mix Designs.** Provide classes of concrete meeting the requirements shown in Table 8.

A higher-strength class of concrete with equal or lower water-to-cementitious material (w/cm) ratio may be substituted for the specified class of concrete when approved.

- 4.2. **Mix Design Proportioning.** Furnish mix designs using ACI 211, Tex-470-A, or other approved procedures for the classes of concrete listed in Table 8 unless a design method is indicated on the plans. Perform mix design proportioning by absolute volume method unless otherwise approved. Perform cement replacement using equivalent weight method unless otherwise approved.

Do not exceed the maximum w/cm ratio listed in Table 8 when designing the mixture.

- 4.2.1. **Cementitious Materials.** Do not exceed 700 lb. of cementitious material per cubic yard of concrete unless otherwise specified or approved.

- Use cement of the same type and from the same source for monolithic placements.
- Do not use supplementary cementing materials when white hydraulic cement is specified.

**Table 8
Concrete Classes**

Class of Concrete	Design Strength, ¹ Min f_c (psi)	Max w/cm Ratio	Coarse Aggregate Grades ^{2,3,4}	Cement Types	Mix Design Options	Exceptions to Mix Design Options	General Usage ⁵
A	3,000	0.60	1–4, 8	I, II, I/II, IL, IP, IS, IT, V	1, 2, 4, & 7	When the cementitious material content does not exceed 520 lb./cu. yd., Class C fly ash may be used instead of Class F fly ash.	Curb, gutter, curb & gutter, conc. retards, sidewalks, driveways, back-up walls, anchors, non-reinforced drilled shafts
B	2,000	0.60	2–7				Riprap, traffic signal controller foundations, small roadside signs, and anchors
C ⁶	3,600	0.45	1–6	I, II, I/II, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V	1–8		Drilled shafts, bridge substructure, bridge railing, culverts except top slab of direct traffic culverts, headwalls, wing walls, approach slabs, inlets, manholes, concrete traffic barrier (cast-in-place)
E	3,000	0.50	2–5	I, II, I/II, IL, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V	1–8	When the cementitious material content does not exceed 520 lb./cu. yd., Class C fly ash may be used instead of Class F fly ash.	Seal concrete
F ⁶	Note ⁸	0.45	2–5	I, II, I/II, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V			Railroad structures; occasionally for bridge piers, columns, or bents

Table 8 (continued)
Concrete Classes

Class of Concrete	Design Strength, ¹ Min f _c (psi)	Max w/cm Ratio	Coarse Aggregate Grades ^{2,3,4}	Cement Types	Mix Design Options	Exceptions to Mix Design Options	General Usage ⁵
H ⁶	Note ⁸	0.45	3–6	I, II, I/II, III, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V	1–5	Do not use Type III cement in mass placement concrete. Up to 20% of blended cement may be replaced with listed SCMs when Option 4 is used for precast concrete.	Precast concrete, post-tension members
S ⁶	4,000	0.45	2–5	I, II, I/II, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V	1–8		Bridge slabs, top slabs of direct traffic culverts
P	See Item 360, "Concrete Pavement."	0.50	2–3	I, II, I/II, IL, IP, IS, IT, V	1–8	When the cementitious material content does not exceed 520 lb./cu. yd., Class C fly ash may be used instead of Class F fly ash.	Concrete pavement
CO ⁶	4,600	0.40	6	I, II, I/II, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V	1–8		Bridge deck concrete overlay
LMC ⁶	4,000	0.40	6–8				Latex-modified concrete overlay
SS ⁶	3,600	0.45	4–6				Use a minimum cementitious material content of 658 lb./cu. yd. of concrete.
K ⁶	Note ⁸	0.40	Note ⁸	I, II, I/II, III, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V			Note ⁸
HES	Note ⁸	0.45	Note ⁸	I, IL, II, I/II, III		Mix design options do not apply. 700 lb. of cementitious material per cubic yard limit does not apply.	Concrete pavement, concrete pavement repair
"X" (HPC) <small>6,9,10</small>	Note ¹¹	0.45	Note ¹¹	I, II, I/II, III, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V	1–5, & 8	Maximum fly ash replacement for Options 1 and 3 may be increased to 45%. Up to 20% of a blended cement may be replaced with listed SCMs for Option 4. Do not use Option 8 for precast concrete.	
"X" (SRC) <small>6,9,10</small>	Note ¹¹	0.45	Note ¹¹	I/II, II, IP, IS, IT, ⁷ V	1–4, & 7	Do not use Class C Fly Ash. Type III-MS may be used where allowed. Type I and Type III cements may be used with Options 1–3, with a maximum w/cm of 0.40. Up to 20% of blended cement may be replaced with listed SCMs when Option 4 is used for precast concrete. Do not use Option 7 for precast concrete.	

1. Design strength must be attained within 56 days.
2. Do not use Grade 1 coarse aggregate except in massive foundations with 4 in. minimum clear spacing between reinforcing steel bars, unless otherwise permitted. Do not use Grade 1 aggregate in drilled shafts.
3. Use Grade 8 aggregate in extruded curbs unless otherwise approved.
4. Other grades of coarse aggregate maybe used in non-structural concrete classes when allowed by the Engineer.
5. For information only.
6. Structural concrete classes.
7. Do not use Type IT cements containing > 5% limestone.
8. As shown on the plans or specified.
9. "X" denotes class of concrete shown on the plans or specified.
10. (HPC): High Performance Concrete, (SRC): Sulfate Resistant Concrete.
11. Same as class of concrete shown on the plans.

4.2.2. **Aggregates.** Recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete may be used as a coarse or fine aggregate in Class A, B, D, E, and P concrete. Limit recycled crushed concrete fine aggregate to a maximum of 20% of the fine aggregate.

Use light-colored aggregates when white hydraulic cement is specified.

Use fine aggregate with an acid insoluble residue of at least 60% by weight when tested in accordance with Tex-612-J in all concrete subject to direct traffic.

Use the following equation to determine if the aggregate combination meets the acid insoluble residue requirement when blending fine aggregate or using an intermediate aggregate:

$$\frac{(A_1 \times P_1) + (A_2 \times P_2) + (A_{ia} \times P_{ia})}{100} \geq 60\%$$

where:

A_1 = acid insoluble (%) of fine aggregate 1

A_2 = acid insoluble (%) of fine aggregate 2

A_{ia} = acid insoluble (%) of intermediate aggregate passing the 3/8 in. sieve

P_1 = percent by weight of fine aggregate 1 of the fine aggregate blend

P_2 = percent by weight of fine aggregate 2 of the fine aggregate blend

P_{ia} = percent by weight of intermediate aggregate passing the 3/8 in. sieve

Alternatively to the above equation, blend fine aggregate with a micro-deval loss of less than 12%, when tested in accordance with Tex-461-A, with at least 40% of a fine aggregate with an acid insoluble residue of at least 60%.

- 4.2.3. **Chemical Admixtures.** Do not use Type C, Type E, Type F, or Type G admixtures in Class S bridge deck concrete. Do not use chemical admixtures containing calcium chloride in any concrete.

Use a 30% calcium nitrite solution when a corrosion-inhibiting admixture is required. The corrosion-inhibiting admixture must be set neutral unless otherwise approved. Dose the admixture at the rate of gallons of admixture per cubic yard of concrete shown on the plans.

- 4.2.4. **Air Entrainment.** Use an approved air-entraining admixture when air-entrained concrete is specified, or when an air-entraining admixture is used at the Contractor's option, and do not exceed the manufacturer's recommended dosage. Ensure the minimum entrained air content is at least 3.0% for all classes of concrete except Class P when air-entrained concrete is specified, during trial batch, or when providing previous field data.

- 4.2.5. **Slump.** Provide concrete with a slump in accordance with Table 9 unless otherwise specified. When approved, the slump of a given concrete mix may be increased above the values shown in Table 9 using chemical admixtures, provided the admixture-treated concrete has the same or lower water-to-cementitious material ratio and does not exhibit segregation or excessive bleeding. Request approval to exceed the slump limits in Table 9 sufficiently in advance for proper evaluation by the Engineer.

Perform job-control testing of slump in accordance with Section 421.4.8.3.1., "Job-Control Testing."

**Table 9
Placement Slump Requirements**

General Usage ¹	Placement Slump Range, ² in.
Walls (over 9 in. thick), caps, columns, piers, approach slabs, concrete overlays	3 to 5
Bridge slabs, top slabs of direct traffic culverts, latex-modified concrete for bridge deck overlays	3 to 5-1/2
Inlets, manholes, walls (less than 9 in. thick), bridge railing, culverts, concrete traffic barrier, concrete pavement (formed), seal concrete	4 to 5-1/2
Precast concrete	4 to 9
Underwater concrete placements	6 to 8-1/2
Drilled shafts, slurry displaced and underwater drilled shafts	See Item 416, "Drilled Shaft Foundations."
Curb, gutter, curb and gutter, concrete retards, sidewalk, driveways, anchors, riprap, small roadside sign foundations, concrete pavement repair, concrete repair	As approved

1. For information only.
2. For fiber reinforced concrete, perform slump before addition of fibers.

4.2.6. Mix Design Options.

4.2.6.1. **Option 1.** Replace 20% to 35% of the cement with Class F fly ash.

4.2.6.2. **Option 2.** Replace 35% to 50% of the cement with slag cement or MFFA.

4.2.6.3. **Option 3.** Replace 35% to 50% of the cement with a combination of Class F fly ash, slag cement, MFFA, UFFA, metakaolin, or silica fume; however, no more than 35% may be fly ash, and no more than 10% may be silica fume.

4.2.6.4. **Option 4.** Use Type IP, Type IS, or Type IT cement as allowed in Table 5 for each class of concrete. Up to 10% of a Type IP, Type IS, or Type IT cement may be replaced with Class F fly ash, slag cement, or silica fume. Use no more than 10% silica fume in the final cementitious material mixture if the Type IT cement contains silica fume, and silica fume is used to replace the cement.

4.2.6.5. **Option 5.** Replace 35% to 50% of the cement with a combination of Class C fly ash and at least 6% of silica fume, UFFA, or metakaolin. However, no more than 35% may be Class C fly ash, and no more than 10% may be silica fume.

4.2.6.6. **Option 6.** Use a lithium nitrate admixture at a minimum dosage determined by testing conducted in accordance with Tex-471-A, "Lithium Dosage Determination Using Accelerated Mortar Bar Testing." Before use of the mix, provide an annual certified test report signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer, from a laboratory on the Department's MPL, certified by the Construction Division as being capable of testing according to Tex-471-A, "Lithium Dosage Determination Using Accelerated Mortar Bar Testing."

4.2.6.7. **Option 7.** Ensure the total alkali contribution from the cement in the concrete does not exceed 3.5 lb. per cubic yard of concrete when using hydraulic cement not containing SCMs calculated as follows:

$$\text{lb. alkali per cu. yd.} = \frac{(\text{lb. cement per cu. yd.}) \times (\% \text{ Na}_2\text{O equivalent in cement})}{100}$$

4.2.6.8. **Option 8.** Perform annual testing as required for any deviations from Options 1–5 or use mix design options listed in Table 10. Laboratories performing ASTM C1260, ASTM C1567, and ASTM C1293 testing must be listed on the Department's MPL. Before use of the mix, provide a certified test report signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer demonstrating the proposed mixture conforms to the requirements of Table 10.

Provide a certified test report signed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer, when HPC is required, and less than 20% of the cement is replaced with SCMs, demonstrating ASTM C1202 test results indicate the permeability of the concrete is less than 1,500 coulombs tested immediately after either of the following curing schedules:

- Moisture cure specimens 56 days at 73°F.
- Moisture cure specimens 7 days at 73°F followed by 21 days at 100°F.

Table 10
Option 8 Testing and Mix Design Requirements

Scenario	ASTM C1260 Result		Testing Requirements for Mix Design Materials or Prescriptive Mix Design Options ¹
	Mix Design Fine Aggregate	Mix Design Coarse Aggregate	
A	> 0.10%	> 0.10%	Determine the dosage of SCMs needed to limit the 14-day expansion of each aggregate ² to 0.08% when tested individually in accordance with ASTM C1567, or Use a minimum of 40% Class C fly ash with a maximum CaO ³ content of 25%.
B	≤ 0.10%	≤ 0.10%	Use a minimum of 40% Class C fly ash with a maximum CaO ³ content of 25%, or Use any ternary combination which replaces 35% to 50% of cement.
	≤ 0.10%	ASTM C1293 1 yr. Expansion ≤ 0.04%	Use a minimum of 20% of any Class C fly ash, or Use any ternary combination which replaces 35% to 50% of cement.
C	≤ 0.10%	> 0.10%	Determine the dosage of SCMs needed to limit the 14-day expansion of coarse and intermediate ² aggregate to 0.08% when tested individually in accordance with ASTM C1567, or Use a minimum of 40% Class C fly ash with a maximum CaO ³ content of 25%.
D	> 0.10%	≤ 0.10%	Use a minimum of 40% Class C fly ash with a maximum CaO ³ content of 25%, or Use any ternary combination which replaces 35% to 50% of cement.
	> 0.10%	ASTM C1293 1 yr. Expansion ≤ 0.04%	Determine the dosage of SCMs needed to limit the 14-day expansion of fine aggregate to 0.08% when tested in accordance with ASTM C1567.

1. Do not use Class C fly ash if the ASTM C1260 value of the fine, intermediate, or coarse aggregate is 0.30% or greater, unless the fly ash is used as part of a ternary system.
2. Intermediate size aggregates will fall under the requirements of mix design coarse aggregate.
3. Average the CaO content from the previous ten values as listed on the mill certificate.

4.2.7. **Optimized Aggregate Gradation (OAG) Concrete.** The gradation requirements in Table 3 and Table 4 do not apply when OAG concrete is specified or used by the Contractor unless otherwise shown on the plans. Use Tex-470-A to establish the optimized aggregate gradation. Use at least 420 lb. per cubic yard of cementitious material when OAG concrete is used unless otherwise approved. Use a coarse aggregate with a maximum nominal size of 1-1/2 in. for Class P concrete. Use a coarse aggregate for all other classes of concrete with a maximum nominal size not larger than:

- 1/5 the narrowest dimension between sides of forms, or
- 1/3 the depth of slabs, or
- 3/4 the minimum clear spacing between individual reinforcing bars or wires, bundles of bars, individual tendons, bundled tendons, or ducts.

Make necessary adjustments to individual aggregate stockpile proportions during OAG concrete production when the gradation deviates from the optimized gradation requirements.

4.2.8. **Self-Consolidating Concrete (SCC).** Provide SCC meeting the following requirements shown in Table 11 when approved for use in precast concrete. Use concrete with a slump flow that can be placed without vibration and will not segregate or excessively bleed.

Increase the slump flow of a given concrete mix above the values shown in Table 11 when approved, provided the concrete has the same or lower water-to-cementitious material ratio and meets all other requirements listed in Table 11. Request approval to exceed the slump flow limits sufficiently in advance for proper evaluation by the Engineer.

Table 11
Mix Design Requirements for SCC

Tests	Test Method	Acceptable Limits
Slump Flow for Precast Concrete	ASTM C1611	22 to 27 ¹
Slump Flow for Drilled Shafts	ASTM C1611	19 to 24 ¹
T ₅₀ , sec	ASTM C1611	2 to 7
VSI Rating	ASTM C1611	0 or 1
Passing Ability, in.	ASTM C1621	≤ 2
Segregation Column, %	ASTM C1610	≤ 10
Bleeding, %	ASTM C232	≤ 2.5

1. These slump flow limits are generally acceptable for most applications. However, slump flow limits may be adjusted during mix design approval process and when approved by the Engineer.

- 4.3. **Concrete Trial Batches.** Perform preliminary and final trial batches when required by the plans, or when previous satisfactory field data is not available. Submit previous satisfactory field data to the Engineer showing the proposed mix design conforms to specification requirements when trial batches are not required and before concrete is placed.

Perform preliminary and final trial batches for all self-consolidating concrete mix designs.

- 4.3.1. **Preliminary Trial Batches.** Perform all necessary preliminary trial batch testing when required, and provide documentation including mix design, material proportions, and test results substantiating the mix design conforms to specification requirements.

- 4.3.2. **Final Trial batches.** Make all final trial batches using the proposed ingredients in a mixer that is representative of the mixers to be used on the job when required. Make the batch size at least 50% of the mixer's rated capacity. Perform fresh concrete tests for air content and slump, and make, cure, and test strength specimens for compliance with specification requirements. Test at least one set of design strength specimens, consisting of 2 specimens per set, at 7-day, 28-day, and at least one additional age unless otherwise directed. Before placing, provide the Engineer the option of witnessing final trial batches, including the testing of the concrete. If not provided this option, the Engineer may require additional trial batches, including testing, before the concrete is placed.

Conduct all testing listed in Table 11 when performing trial batches for self-consolidating concrete. Make an additional mixture with 3% more water than the preliminary trial batch. Make necessary adjustments to the mix design if this additional mixture does not meet requirements of Table 11. Cast and evaluate mock-ups for precast concrete that are representative of the actual product as directed. Provide the Engineer the option of witnessing final trial batches, including the testing of the concrete and the casting of the mock-ups before placement. If not provided this option, the Engineer may require additional trial batches, including testing and mock-ups, before the concrete is placed.

Establish 7-day compressive strength target values using the following formula for each Class A, B, and E concrete mix designs to be used:

$$\text{Target value} = \text{Minimum design strength} \times \frac{7\text{-day avg. trial batch strength}}{28\text{-day avg. trial batch strength}}$$

Submit previous satisfactory field data, data from a new trial batch, or other evidence showing the change will not adversely affect the relevant properties of the concrete when changes are made to the type, brand, or source of aggregates, cement, SCM, water, or chemical admixtures. Submit the data for approval before making changes to the mix design. A change in vendor does not necessarily constitute a change in materials or source. The Engineer may waive new trial batches when there is a prior record of satisfactory performance with the ingredients. During concrete production, dosage changes of chemical admixtures used in the trial batches will not require a re-evaluation of the mix design.

The Contractor has the option of performing trial batches in conjunction with concrete placements except for SCC mixtures, when new trial batches are required during the course of the project. If the concrete fails to meet any requirement, the Engineer will determine acceptability and payment adjustments.

Establish the strength–maturity relationship in accordance with Tex-426-A when the maturity method is specified or permitted. When using the maturity method, any changes in any of the ingredients, including changes in proportions, will require the development of a new strength–maturity relationship for the mix.

4.3.3. **Mix Design of Record.** Once a trial batch or previously satisfactory field data substantiates the mix design, the proportions and mixing methods used become the mix design of record. Do not exceed mix design water-to-cement ratio.

4.4. **Production Testing.**

4.4.1. **Aggregate Moisture Testing.** Determine moisture content per Tex-409-A or Tex-425-A for coarse, intermediate, and fine aggregates at least twice a week, when there is an apparent change, or for new shipments of aggregate. When aggregate hoppers or storage bins are equipped with properly maintained electronic moisture probes for continuous moisture determination, moisture tests per Tex-409-A or Tex-425-A are not required. Electronic moisture probes, however, must be verified at least every 90 days against Tex-409-A and be accurate to within 1.0% of the actual moisture content.

When producing SCC, and when aggregate hoppers or storage bins are not equipped with electric moisture probes, determine the moisture content of the aggregates before producing the first concrete batch each day. Thereafter, determine the moisture content every 4 hr. or when there is an apparent change while SCC is being produced.

4.4.2. **Aggregate Gradation Testing.** Perform a sieve analysis in accordance with Tex-401-A on each stockpile used in the blend at least one day before producing OAG concrete when producing optimized aggregate gradation concrete. Perform sieve analysis on each stockpile after every 10,000 cubic yards of OAG concrete produced. Provide sieve analysis data to the Engineer.

4.5. **Measurement of Materials.**

4.5.1. **Non-Volumetric Mixers.** Measure aggregates by weight. Correct batch weight measurements for aggregate moisture content. Measure mixing water, consisting of water added to the batch, ice added to the batch, water occurring as surface moisture on the aggregates, and water introduced in the form of admixtures, by volume or weight. Measure ice by weight. Measure cement and supplementary cementing materials in a hopper and on a separate scale from those used for other materials. Measure the cement first when measuring the cumulative weight. Measure concrete chemical admixtures by weight or volume. Measure batch materials within the tolerances of Table 12.

Table 12
Mix Design Batching Tolerances—Non-Volumetric Mixers

Material	Tolerance (%)
Cement, wt.	-1 to +3
SCM, wt.	-1 to +3
Cement + SCM (cumulative weighing), wt.	-1 to +3
Water, wt. or volume	±3 ¹
Fine aggregate, wt.	±2
Coarse aggregate, wt.	±2
Fine + coarse aggregate (cumulative weighing), wt.	±1
Chemical admixtures, wt. or volume	±3

1. Allowable deviation from target weight not including water withheld or moisture in the aggregate. The Engineer will verify the water-to-cementitious material ratio is within specified limits.

Ensure the quantity measured, when measuring cementitious materials at less than 30% of scale capacity, is accurate to not less than the required amount and not more than 4% in excess. Ensure the cumulative quantity, when measuring aggregates in a cumulative weigh batcher at less than 30% of the scale capacity,

is measured accurate to $\pm 0.3\%$ of scale capacity or $\pm 3\%$ of the required cumulative weight, whichever is less.

Measure cement in number of bags under special circumstances when approved. Use the weights listed on the packaging. Weighing bags of cement is not required. Ensure fractional bags are not used except for small hand-mixed batches of approximately 5 cu. ft. or less and when an approved method of volumetric or weight measurement is used.

- 4.5.2. **Volumetric Mixers.** Provide an accurate method of measuring all ingredients by volume, and calibrate equipment to assure correct measurement of materials within the specified tolerances. Base tolerances on volume–weight relationship established by calibration, and measure the various ingredients within the tolerances of Table 13. Correct batch measurements for aggregate moisture content.

Table 13
Mix Design Batching Tolerances—Volumetric Mixers

Material	Tolerance
Cement, wt. %	0 to +4
SCM, wt. %	0 to +4
Fine aggregate, wt. %	± 2
Coarse aggregate, wt. %	± 2
Admixtures, wt. or volume %	± 3
Water, wt. or volume %	± 1

- 4.6. **Mixing and Delivering Concrete.**

- 4.6.1. **Mixing Concrete.** Operate mixers and agitators within the limits of the rated capacity and speed of rotation for mixing and agitation as designated by the manufacturer of the equipment. Provide concrete in a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass with a satisfactory degree of uniformity when tested in accordance with Tex-472-A.

Do not top-load new concrete onto returned concrete.

Adjust mixing times and batching operations as necessary when the concrete contains silica fume to ensure the material is completely and uniformly dispersed in the mix. The dispersion of the silica fume within the mix will be verified by the Construction Division, Materials and Pavements Section, using cylinders made from trial batches. Make necessary changes to the batching operations, if uniform dispersion is not achieved, until uniform and complete dispersion of the silica fume is achieved.

Mix concrete by hand methods or in a small motor-driven mixer when permitted, for small placements of less than 2 cu. yd. For such placements, proportion the mix by volume or weight.

- 4.6.2. **Delivering Concrete.** Deliver concrete to the project in a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass, and discharge the concrete with a satisfactory degree of uniformity. Conduct testing in accordance with Tex-472-A when there is a reason to suspect the uniformity of concrete and as directed.

Maintain concrete delivery and placement rates sufficient to prevent cold joints.

Adding chemical admixtures or the portion of water withheld is only permitted at the jobsite, under the supervision of the Engineer, to adjust the slump or slump flow of the concrete. Do not add water or chemical admixtures to the batch after more than an amount needed to conduct slump testing has been discharged. Turn the drum or blades at least 30 additional revolutions at mixing speed to ensure thorough and uniform mixing of the concrete. When this water is added, do not exceed the approved mix design water-to-cementitious material ratio.

Before unloading, furnish the delivery ticket for the batch of concrete containing the information required on Department Form 596, "Concrete Batch Ticket." The Engineer will verify all required information is provided on the delivery tickets. The Engineer may suspend concrete operations until the corrective actions are

implemented if delivery tickets do not provide the required information. The Engineer will verify the design water-to-cementitious material ratio is not exceeded.

Begin the discharge of concrete delivered in truck mixers within the times listed in Table 14. Concrete may be discharged after these times provided the concrete temperature and slump meet the requirements listed in this Item and other pertinent Items. Perform these tests with certified testing personnel per Section 421.4.8.1., "Certification of Testing Personnel." Provide the Engineer the option of witnessing testing of the concrete. If not provided this option, the Engineer may require additional testing before the concrete is placed.

Table 14
Concrete Discharge Times

Fresh Concrete Temperature, °F	Max Time After Batching for Concrete Not Containing Type B or D Admixtures, min.	Max Time After Batching for Concrete Containing Type B or D Admixtures, ¹ min.
90 and above	45	75
75 ≤ T < 90	60	90
T < 75	90	120

- Concrete must contain at least the minimum manufacturer's recommended dosage of Type B or D admixture.

- 4.7. **Placing, Finishing, and Curing Concrete.** Place, finish, and cure concrete in accordance with the pertinent Items.
- 4.8. **Sampling and Testing of Concrete.** Unless otherwise specified, all fresh and hardened concrete is subject to testing as follows:
- 4.8.1. **Certification of Testing Personnel.** Contractor personnel performing testing must be either ACI-certified or qualified by a Department-recognized equivalent written and performance testing program for the tests being performed. Personnel performing these tests are subject to Department approval. Use of a commercial laboratory is permitted at the Contractor's option. All personnel performing testing using the maturity method must be qualified by a training program recognized by the Department before using this method on the job.
- 4.8.2. **Fresh Concrete.** Provide safe access and assistance to the Engineer during sampling. Fresh concrete will be sampled for testing at the discharge end if using belt conveyors or pumps. When it is impractical to sample at the discharge end, a sample will be taken at the time of discharge from the delivery equipment and correlation testing will be performed and documented to ensure specification requirements are met at the discharge end.
- 4.8.3. **Testing of Fresh Concrete.** Test for the fresh properties listed in Table 15.

Table 15
Fresh Concrete Tests

Tests	Test Methods
Slump ¹	Tex-415-A
Temperature ¹	Tex-422-A
Air Content ²	Tex-414-A, Tex-416-A or ASTM C457

- Job-control testing performed by the Contractor.
- Only required during concrete trial batch when air-entrained concrete is specified on the plans.

Concrete with a slump lower than the minimum placement slump in Table 9 after the addition of all water withheld, or concrete exhibiting segregation and excessive bleeding may be rejected.

When SCC exceeds the maximum placement slump flow or VSI rating, the Engineer will immediately resample and retest the concrete slump flow and VSI rating. If the concrete exceeds the maximum placement slump flow or VSI rating after the retest, the concrete will be rejected.

- 4.8.3.1. **Job-Control Testing.** Perform job-control concrete temperature and slump testing as specified in Table 16 unless otherwise specified. Provide the Engineer the opportunity to witness the testing. The Engineer may

require a retest if not given the opportunity to witness. Immediately notify the Engineer of any concrete temperature or slump nonconformity issues. Furnish a copy of all test results to the Engineer daily.

Table 16
Job-Control Testing Frequencies

Concrete Placements	Frequency
Bridge Deck Placements	Test the first few loads, then every fifth load delivered.
All Other Structural Class Concrete Placements	One test every 60 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
Non-Structural Class Concrete Placements	One test every 180 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.

Immediately resample and retest the concrete slump when the concrete exceeds the slump range at time of placement. If the concrete exceeds the slump range after the retest, and is used at the Contractor's option, the Engineer will make strength specimens as specified in Article 421.5., "Acceptance of Concrete."

- 4.8.3.2. **Strength Specimen Handling.** Remove specimens from their molds and deliver Department test specimens to curing facilities within 24 to 48 hr. after molding, in accordance with pertinent test procedures unless otherwise shown on the plans or directed. Clean and prepare molds for reuse if necessary.

5. ACCEPTANCE OF CONCRETE

The Engineer will sample and test the fresh and hardened concrete for acceptance. The test results will be reported to the Contractor and the concrete supplier. Investigate the quality of the materials, the concrete production operations, and other possible problem areas to determine the cause for any concrete that fails to meet the required strengths as outlined below. Take necessary actions to correct the problem including redesign of the concrete mix. The Engineer may suspend all concrete operations under the pertinent Items if the Contractor is unable to identify, document, and correct the cause of the low strengths in a timely manner. Resume concrete operations only after obtaining approval for any proposed corrective actions. Concrete failing to meet the required strength as outlined below will be evaluated using the procedures listed in Article 421.6., "Measurement and Payment."

- 5.1. **Structural Concrete.** For concrete classes identified as structural concrete in Table 8, the Engineer will make and test 7-day and 28-day specimens. Acceptance will be based on attaining the design strength given in Table 8.
- 5.2. **Class P and Class HES.** The Engineer will base acceptance in accordance with Item 360, "Concrete Pavement," and Item 361, "Repair of Concrete Pavement."
- 5.3. **All Other Concrete.** For concrete classes not identified as structural concrete in Table 8, the Engineer will make and test 7-day specimens. The Engineer will base acceptance on the 7-day target value established in accordance with Section 421.4.3., "Concrete Trial Batches."

6. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly but will be subsidiary to pertinent Items.

The following procedure will be used to evaluate concrete where one or more project acceptance test specimens fail to meet the required design strength specified in this Item or on the plans:

- The concrete for a given placement will be considered structurally adequate and accepted at full price if the average of all test results for specimens made at the time of placement meets the required design strength provided no single test result is less than 85% of the required design strength.
- The Engineer will perform a structural review of the concrete to determine its adequacy to remain in service if the average of all test results for specimens made at the time of placement is less than the required design strength or if any test results are less than 85% of the required design strength. If the in-

situ concrete strength is needed for the structural review, take cores at locations designated by the Engineer in accordance with Tex-424-A. The Engineer will test the cores. The coring and testing will be at the Contractor's expense.

- If all of the tested cores meet the required design strength, the concrete will be paid for at full price.
- If any of the tested cores do not meet the required design strength, but the average strength attained is determined to be structurally adequate, the Engineer will determine the limits of the pay adjustment using the following formula:

$$A = B_p \left[-5.37 \left(\frac{S_a}{S_s} \right)^2 + 11.69 \left(\frac{S_a}{S_s} \right) - 5.32 \right]$$

where:

A = Amount to be paid per unit of measure for the entire placement in question

S_a = Actual average strength from cylinders or cores. Use values from cores, if taken.

S_s = Minimum required strength (specified)

B_p = Unit Bid Price

- If the structural review determines the concrete is not adequate to remain in service, the Engineer will determine the limits of the concrete to be removed.
- The decision to reject structurally inadequate concrete or to apply the pay adjustment factor will be made no later than 56 days after placement.

Item 440

Reinforcement for Concrete



1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and place reinforcement of the type, size, and details shown on the plans.

2. MATERIALS

Use deformed steel bar reinforcement unless otherwise specified or allowed.

- 2.1. **Approved Mills.** Before furnishing steel, producing mills of reinforcing steel for the Department must be pre-approved in accordance with [DMS-7320](#), "Qualification Procedure for Reinforcing Steel Producing Mills," by the Construction Division. The Department's MPL has a list of approved producing mills. Reinforcing steel obtained from unapproved sources will not be accepted.

Contact the Construction Division with the name and location of the producing mill for stainless reinforcing steel, low carbon/chromium reinforcing steel, or dual-coated reinforcing steel at least 4 weeks before ordering any material.

- 2.2. **Deformed Steel Bar Reinforcement.** Provide deformed reinforcing steel conforming to one of the following:

- ASTM A615, Grades 60, 75, or 80;
- ASTM A996, Type A, Grade 60;
- ASTM A996, Type R, Grade 60, permitted in concrete pavement only (Furnish ASTM A996, Type R bars as straight bars only and do not bend them. Bend tests are not required.); or
- ASTM A706, Grades 60 or 80.

Provide the grade of reinforcing steel shown on the plans. Provide Grade 60 if no grade is shown.

The nominal size, area, and weight of reinforcing steel bars this Item covers are shown in Table 1.

Table 1
Size, Area, and Weight of Reinforcing Steel Bars

Bar Size Number (in.)	Diameter (in.)	Area (sq. in.)	Weight per Foot (lbs.)
3	0.375	0.11	0.376
4	0.500	0.20	0.668
5	0.625	0.31	1.043
6	0.750	0.44	1.502
7	0.875	0.60	2.044
8	1.000	0.79	2.670
9	1.128	1.00	3.400
10	1.270	1.27	4.303
11	1.410	1.56	5.313
14	1.693	2.25	7.650
18	2.257	4.00	13.60

- 2.3. **Smooth Steel Bar Reinforcement.** Provide smooth bars for concrete pavement with a yield strength of at least 60 ksi and meeting ASTM A615. Provide steel conforming to ASTM A615 or meet the physical requirements of ASTM A36 for smooth bars that are larger than No. 3. Designate smooth bars by size number up to No. 4 and by diameter in inches above No. 4.

- 2.4. **Spiral Reinforcement.** Provide bars or wire for spiral reinforcement of the grade and minimum size or gauge shown on the plans.

Provide smooth or deformed wire conforming to ASTM A1064. Provide bars conforming to ASTM A615; ASTM A996, Type A; or ASTM A675, Grade 80, meeting dimensional requirements of ASTM A615.

- 2.5. **Weldable Reinforcing Steel.** Provide reinforcing steel conforming to ASTM A706 or with a maximum carbon equivalent (C.E.) of 0.55% if welding of reinforcing steel is required or desired. Provide a report showing the percentages of elements necessary to establish C.E. for reinforcing steel that does not meet ASTM A706, in order to be structurally welded. These requirements do not pertain to miscellaneous welds on reinforcing steel as defined in Section 448.4.2.1.1., "Miscellaneous Welding Applications."

Calculate C.E. using the following formula:

$$C.E. = \%C + \frac{\%Mn}{6} + \frac{\%Cu}{40} + \frac{\%Ni}{20} + \frac{\%Cr}{10} - \frac{\%Mo}{50} - \frac{\%V}{10}$$

Do not weld stainless reinforcing steel without permission from the Engineer. Provide stainless reinforcing steel suitable for welding, if required, and submit welding procedures and electrodes to the Engineer for approval.

- 2.6. **Welded Wire Reinforcement.** Provide welded wire reinforcement (WWR) conforming to ASTM A1064. Observe the relations shown in Table 2 among size number, diameter in inches, and area when ordering wire by size numbers, unless otherwise specified. Precede the size number for deformed wire with "D" and for smooth wire with "W."

Designate WWR as shown in the following example: 6 × 12 – W16 × W8 (indicating 6-in. longitudinal wire spacing and 12-in. transverse wire spacing with smooth No. 16 wire longitudinally and smooth No. 8 wire transversely).

Table 2
Wire Size Number, Diameter, and Area

Size Number (in.)	Diameter (in.)	Area (sq. in.)
31	0.628	0.310
30	0.618	0.300
28	0.597	0.280
26	0.575	0.260
24	0.553	0.240
22	0.529	0.220
20	0.505	0.200
18	0.479	0.180
16	0.451	0.160
14	0.422	0.140
12	0.391	0.120
10	0.357	0.100
8	0.319	0.080
7	0.299	0.070
6	0.276	0.060
5.5	0.265	0.055
5	0.252	0.050
4.5	0.239	0.045
4	0.226	0.040
3.5	0.211	0.035
2.9	0.192	0.035
2.5	0.178	0.025
2	0.160	0.020
1.4	0.134	0.014
1.2	0.124	0.012
0.5	0.080	0.005

Note—Size numbers (in.) are the nominal cross-sectional area of the wire in hundredths of a square inch. Fractional sizes between the sizes listed above are also available and acceptable for use.

- 2.7. **Epoxy Coating.** Provide epoxy coated reinforcing steel as shown on the plans. Before furnishing epoxy coated reinforcing steel, an epoxy applicator must be pre-approved in accordance with [DMS-7330](#), "Qualification Procedure for Reinforcing Steel Epoxy Coating Applicators." The Department's MPL has a list of approved applicators.

Furnish coated reinforcing steel meeting the requirements in Table 3.

Table 3
Epoxy Coating Requirements for Reinforcing Steel

Material	Specification
Bar	ASTM A775 or A934
Wire or WWR	ASTM A884 Class A or B
Mechanical couplers	As shown on the plans
Hardware	As shown on the plans

Use epoxy coating material and coating repair material that complies with [DMS-8130](#), "Epoxy Powder Coating for Reinforcing Steel." Patch no more than 1/4-in. total length in any foot at the applicator's plant.

Maintain identification of all reinforcing steel throughout the coating and fabrication process and until delivery to the project site.

Furnish 1 copy of a written certification verifying the coated reinforcing steel meets the requirements of this Item and 1 copy of the manufacturer's control tests.

- 2.8. **Mechanical Couplers.** Use couplers of the type specified in [DMS-4510](#), "Mechanical Couplers for Reinforcing Steel," Article 4510.5.A, "General Requirements," when mechanical splices in reinforcing steel bars are shown on the plans.

Furnish only couplers pre-qualified in accordance with [DMS-4510](#), “Mechanical Couplers for Reinforcing Steel.” Ensure sleeve-wedge type couplers are not used on coated reinforcing. Sample and test couplers for use on individual projects in accordance with [DMS-4510](#), “Mechanical Couplers for Reinforcing Steel.” Furnish couplers only at locations shown on the plans.

Furnish couplers for stainless reinforcing steel with the same alloy designation as the reinforcing steel.

- 2.9. **Fibers.** Supply fibers conforming to [DMS-4550](#) “Fibers for Concrete” at the minimum dosage listed in the Department’s MPL, when allowed by the plans. Use non-metallic fibers when shown on the plans.
- 2.10. **Stainless Reinforcing Steel.** Provide deformed steel bars of the types listed in Table 4 and conforming to ASTM A955, Grade 60 or higher when stainless reinforcing steel is required on the plans.

Table 4
Acceptable Types of Deformed Stainless Steel Bar

UNS Designation	S31653	S31803	S24100	S32304
AISI Type	316LN	2205	XM-28	2304

- 2.11. **Low Carbon/Chromium Reinforcing Steel.** Provide deformed steel bars conforming to ASTM A1035, Grade 100 when low carbon/chromium reinforcing steel is required on the plans.
- 2.12. **Dual-Coated Reinforcing Steel.** Provide deformed bars conforming to ASTM A1055, Grade 60 or higher when dual-coated reinforcing steel is required on the plans.
- 2.13. **Glass Fiber Reinforced Polymer Bars (GFRP).** Provide bars conforming to the AASHTO LRFD *Bridge Design Guide Specifications for GFRP-Reinforced Concrete Bridge Decks and Traffic Railings*, Section 4, “Material Specifications” when GFRP bars are required on the plans. Provide sample certification demonstrating the GFRP bar supplier has produced bar that meets the Material Specifications 2 mo. before fabrication. Furnish certification upon shipment that the GFRP bar supplied meets the Material Specifications.

3. CONSTRUCTION

- 3.1. **Bending.** Fabricate reinforcing steel bars as prescribed in the CRSI *Manual of Standard Practice* to the shapes and dimensions shown on the plans. Fabricate in the shop if possible. Field-fabricate, if permitted, using a method approved by the Engineer. Replace improperly fabricated, damaged, or broken bars at no additional expense to the Department. Repair damaged or broken bars embedded in a previous concrete placement using a method approved by the Engineer.

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the inside diameter of bar bends, in terms of the nominal bar diameter (d), must be as shown in Table 5.

Table 5
Minimum Inside Diameter of Bar Bends

Bend	Bar Size Number (in.)	Pin Diameter
Bends of 90° and greater in stirrups, ties, and other secondary bars that enclose another bar in the bend	3, 4, 5	4d
	6, 7, 8	6d
Bends in main bars and in secondary bars not covered above	3 through 8	6d
	9, 10, 11	8d
	14, 18	10d

Bend-test representative specimens as described for smaller bars in the applicable ASTM specification where bending No. 14 or No. 18 Grade 60 bars is required. Make the required 90° bend around a pin with a diameter of 10 times the nominal diameter of the bar.

Bend stainless reinforcing steel in accordance with ASTM A955.

- 3.2. **Tolerances.** Fabrication tolerances for bars are shown in Figure 1.

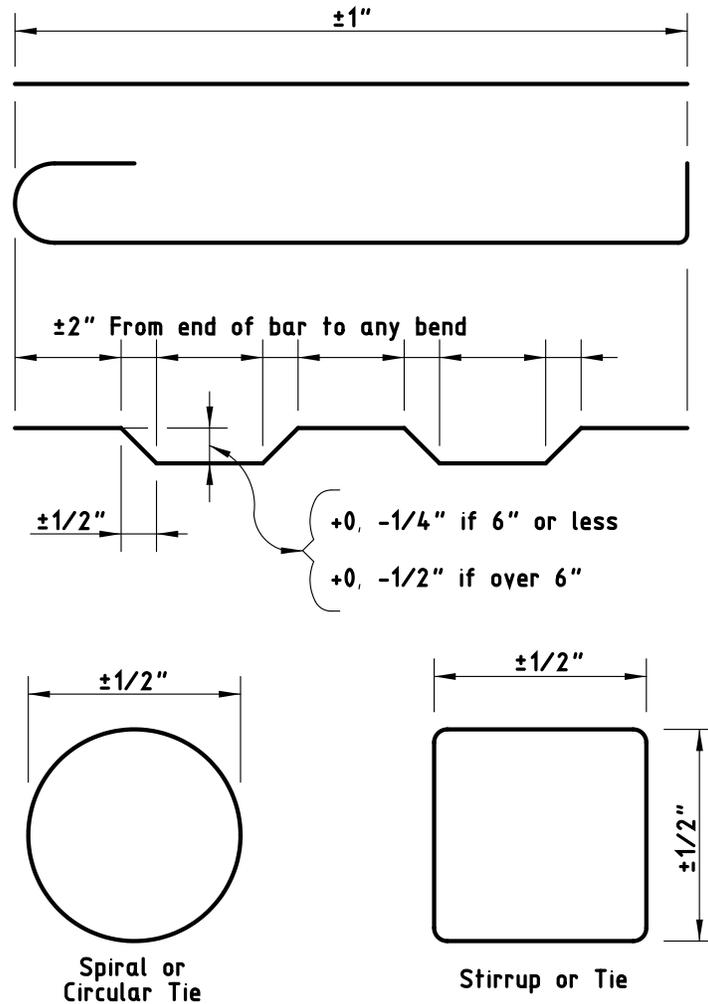


Figure 1
Fabrication Tolerances for Bars

- 3.3. **Storage.** Store reinforcement above the ground on platforms, skids, or other supports, and protect it from damage and deterioration. Ensure reinforcement is free from dirt, paint, grease, oil, and other foreign materials when it is placed in the work. Use reinforcement free from defects such as cracks and delaminations. Rust, surface seams, surface irregularities, or mill scale will not be cause for rejection if the minimum cross-sectional area of a hand wire-brushed specimen meets the requirements for the size of steel specified.

Do not allow stainless reinforcing steel to be in direct contact with uncoated reinforcing steel, nor with galvanized reinforcing steel. This does not apply to stainless steel wires and ties. Store stainless reinforcing steel separately, off the ground on wooden supports.

- 3.4. **Splices.** Lap-splice, weld-splice, or mechanically splice bars as shown on the plans. Additional splices not shown on the plans will require approval. Splices not shown on the plans will be permitted in slabs no more than 15 in. in thickness, columns, walls, and parapets.
- Do not splice bars less than 30 ft. in plan length unless otherwise approved. For bars exceeding 30 ft. in plan length, the distance center-to-center of splices must be at least 30 ft. minus 1 splice length, with no more than 1 individual bar length less than 10 ft. Make lap splices not shown on the plans, but otherwise

permitted, in accordance with Table 6. Maintain the specified concrete cover and spacing at splices, and place the lap-spliced bars in contact, securely tied together.

Table 6
Minimum Lap Requirements for Steel Bar Sizes through No. 11

Bar Size Number (in.)	Uncoated Lap Length	Coated Lap Length
3	1 ft. 4 in.	2 ft. 0 in.
4	1 ft. 9 in.	2 ft. 8 in.
5	2 ft. 2 in.	3 ft. 3 in.
6	2 ft. 7 in.	3 ft. 11 in.
7	3 ft. 5 in.	5 ft. 2 in.
8	4 ft. 6 in.	6 ft. 9 in.
9	5 ft. 8 in.	8 ft. 6 in.
10	7 ft. 3 in.	10 ft. 11 in.
11	8 ft. 11 in.	13 ft. 5 in.

- Do not lap No. 14 or No. 18 bars.
- Lap spiral steel at least 1 turn.
- Splice WWR using a lap length that includes the overlap of at least 2 cross wires plus 2 in. on each sheet or roll. Splices using bars that develop equivalent strength and are lapped in accordance with Table 6 are permitted.
- Lap the existing longitudinal bars with the new bars as shown in Table 6 for box culvert extensions with less than 1 ft. of fill. Lap at least 1 ft. 0 in. for extensions with more than 1 ft. of fill.
- Ensure welded splices conform to the requirements of the plans and of Item 448, "Structural Field Welding." Field-prepare ends of reinforcing bars if they will be butt-welded. Delivered bars must be long enough to permit weld preparation.
- Install mechanical coupling devices in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations at locations shown on the plans. Protect threaded male or female connections, and ensure the threaded connections are clean when making the connection. Do not repair damaged threads.
- Mechanical coupler alternate equivalent strength arrangements, to be accomplished by substituting larger bar sizes or more bars, will be considered if approved in writing before fabrication of the systems.

3.5.

Placing. Place reinforcement as near as possible to the position shown on the plans. Do not vary bars from plan placement by more than 1/12 of the spacing between bars in the plane of the bar parallel to the nearest surface of concrete. Do not vary bars from plan placement by more than 1/4 in in the plane of the bar perpendicular to the nearest surface of concrete. Provide a minimum 1-in. clear cover of concrete to the nearest surface of bar unless otherwise shown on the plans.

For bridge slabs, the clear cover tolerance for the top mat of reinforcement is $-0, +1/2$ in.

Locate the reinforcement accurately in the forms, and hold it firmly in place before and during concrete placement by means of bar supports that are adequate in strength and number to prevent displacement and keep the reinforcement at the proper distance from the forms. Provide bar supports in accordance with the CRSI *Manual of Standard Practice*. Use Class 1 supports, approved plastic bar supports, precast mortar, or concrete blocks when supports are in contact with removable or stay-in-place forms. Use Class 3 supports in slab overlays on concrete panels or on existing concrete slabs. Bar supports in contact with soil or subgrade must be approved.

Use Class 1A supports with epoxy coated reinforcing steel. Provide epoxy or plastic coated tie wires and clips for use with epoxy coated reinforcing steel.

Use mortar or concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 5,000 psi for precast bar supports. Provide a suitable tie wire in each block for anchoring to the bar.

Place individual bar supports in rows at 4-ft. maximum spacing in each direction. Place continuous type bar supports at 4-ft. maximum spacing. Use continuous bar supports with permanent metal deck forms.

The exposure of the ends of longitudinals, stirrups, and spacers used to position the reinforcement in concrete pipe and storm drains is not cause for rejection.

Tie reinforcement for bridge slabs and top slabs of direct traffic culverts at all intersections, except tie only alternate intersections where spacing is less than 1 ft. in each direction. Tie the bars at enough intersections to provide a rigid cage of reinforcement for reinforcement cages for other structural members. Fasten mats of WWR securely at the ends and edges.

Clean mortar, mud, dirt, debris, oil, and other foreign material from the reinforcement before concrete placement. Do not place concrete until authorized.

Stop placement until corrective measures are taken if reinforcement is not adequately supported or tied to resist settlement, reinforcement is floating upward, truss bars are overturning, or movement is detected in any direction during concrete placement.

3.6. **Handling, Placing, and Repairing Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel.**

3.6.1. **Handling.** Provide systems for handling coated reinforcing steel with padded contact areas. Pad bundling bands or use suitable banding to prevent damage to the coating. Lift bundles of coated reinforcement with a strongback, spreader bar, multiple supports, or a platform bridge. Transport the bundled reinforcement carefully, and store it on protective cribbing. Do not drop or drag the coated reinforcement.

3.6.2. **Placing.** Do not flame-cut coated reinforcement. Saw or shear-cut only when approved. Coat cut ends as specified in Section 440.3.6.3., "Repairing Coating."

Do not weld or mechanically couple coated reinforcing steel except where specifically shown on the plans. Remove the epoxy coating at least 6 in. beyond the weld limits before welding and 2 in. beyond the limits of the coupler before assembly. Clean the steel of oil, grease, moisture, dirt, welding contamination (slag or acid residue), and rust to a near-white finish after welding or coupling. Check the existing epoxy for damage. Remove any damaged or loose epoxy back to sound epoxy coating.

Coat the splice area after cleaning with epoxy repair material to a thickness of 7 to 17 mils after curing. Apply a second application of repair material to the bar and coupler interface to ensure complete sealing of the joint.

3.6.3. **Repairing Coating.** Use material that complies with the requirements of this Item and ASTM D3963 for repairing of the coating. Make repairs in accordance with procedures recommended by the manufacturer of the epoxy coating powder. Apply at least the same coating thickness as required for the original coating for areas to be patched. Repair all visible damage to the coating.

Repair sawed and sheared ends, cuts, breaks, and other damage promptly before additional oxidation occurs. Clean areas to be repaired to ensure they are free from surface contaminants. Make repairs in the shop or field as required.

3.7. **Handling and Placing Stainless Reinforcing Steel.** Handle, cut, and place stainless reinforcing steel bar using tools that are not used on carbon steel. Do not use carbon steel tools, chains, slings, etc. when handling stainless steel. Use only nylon or polypropylene slings. Cut stainless steel reinforcing using shears, saws, abrasive cutoff wheels, or torches. Remove any thermal oxidation using pickling paste. Do not field bend stainless steel reinforcing without approval.

Use 16 gauge fully annealed stainless steel tie wire conforming to the material properties listed in Section 440.2.10., "Stainless Reinforcing Steel." Support all stainless reinforcing steel on solid plastic, stainless steel, or epoxy coated steel chairs. Do not use uncoated carbon steel chairs in contact with stainless reinforcing steel.

- 3.8. **Bending, Handling, Repairing, and Placing GFRP Bars.** Fabricate, handle, repair, and place GFRP bars in accordance with the AASHTO LRFD Bridge Design Guide Specifications for GFRP-Reinforced Concrete Bridge Decks and Traffic Railings, Section 5, Construction Specifications.

4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly but will be considered subsidiary to pertinent Items.

Item 441

Steel Structures



1. DESCRIPTION

Fabricate and erect structural steel and other metals used for steel structures or for steel portions of structures.

2. MATERIALS

- 2.1. **Base Metal.** Use metal that meets Item 442, "Metal for Structures."
- 2.2. **Approved Electrodes and Flux-Electrode Combinations.** Use only electrodes and flux-electrode combinations found on the Department's MPL. To request a product be added to this list or to renew an expired approval, electronically submit a current Certificate of Conformance containing all tests required by the applicable AWS A5 specification according to the applicable welding code (for most construction, AASHTO/AWS D1.5, *Bridge Welding Code*, or AWS D1.1, *Structural Welding Code—Steel*) to the Construction Division.
- 2.3. **High-Strength Bolts.** Use fasteners that meet Item 447, "Structural Bolting." Use galvanized fasteners on field connections of bridge members when ASTM A325 bolts are specified and steel is painted.
- 2.4. **Paint Systems.** Provide the paint system (surface preparation, primer, intermediate, and appearance coats as required) shown on the plans. Provide System IV if no system is specified.
- 2.4.1. **Standard Paint Systems.** Standard paint systems for painting new steel include the following:
- 2.4.1.1. **System III-B.** Provide paint in accordance with [DMS-8101](#), "Structural Steel Paints-Performance." Provide inorganic zinc (IOZ) prime coat, epoxy intermediate coat, and urethane appearance coat for all outer surfaces except those to be in contact with concrete. Provide epoxy zinc prime coat for touchup of IOZ.
- 2.4.1.2. **System IV.** Provide paint in accordance with [DMS-8101](#), "Structural Steel Paints-Performance." Provide IOZ prime coat and acrylic latex appearance coat for all outer surfaces except those to be in contact with concrete. Provide epoxy zinc prime coat for touchup of IOZ.
- 2.4.2. **Paint Inside Tub Girders and Closed Boxes.** Provide a white polyamide cured epoxy for all interior surfaces, including splice plate but excluding the faying surfaces, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide IOZ primer meeting the requirements of [DMS-8101](#), "Structural Steel Paints—Performance," to all interior faying surfaces and splice plates.
- 2.4.3. **Special Protection System.** Provide the type of paint system shown on the plans or in special provisions to this Item. Special Protection Systems must have completed NTPEP Structural Steel Coatings (SSC) testing regimen as a complete system, with full data available through NTPEP.
- 2.4.4. **Galvanizing.** Provide galvanizing, as required, in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing."
- 2.4.5. **Paint over Galvanizing.** Paint over galvanized surfaces, when required, in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing."
- 2.4.6. **Field Painting.** Provide field paint, as required, in accordance with Item 446, "Field Cleaning and Painting Steel."

3. CONSTRUCTION

3.1. General Requirements.

- 3.1.1. **Applicable Codes.** Perform all fabrication of bridge members in accordance with AASHTO/NSBA Steel Bridge Collaboration S2.1. Follow all applicable provisions of the appropriate AWS code (D1.5 or D1.1) except as otherwise noted on the plans or in this Item. Weld sheet steel (thinner than 1/8 in.) in accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.3, Structural Welding Code—Sheet Steel. Unless otherwise stated, requirements of this Item are in addition to the requirements of S2.1 for bridge members. Follow the more stringent requirement in case of a conflict between this Item and S2.1. Perform all bolting in accordance with Item 447, “Structural Bolting.”

Fabricate railroad underpass structures in accordance with the latest AREMA *Manual for Railway Engineering* and this Item. In the case of a conflict between this Item and the AREMA manual, the more stringent requirements apply.

- 3.1.2. **Notice of Fabrication.** Give adequate notice before commencing fabrication work as specified in Table 1. Include a schedule for all major fabrication processes and dates when inspections are to occur.

Table 1
Notice of Beginning Work

Plant Location	Notice Required
In Texas	7 days
In the contiguous United States	21 days
Outside the contiguous United States	60 days

Perform no Department work in the plant before the Engineer authorizes fabrication. The Contractor must bear all Department travel costs when changes to their fabrication or inspection schedules are not adequately conveyed to the Department.

When any structural steel is fabricated outside of the contiguous 48 states, the additional cost of inspection will be in accordance with Article 6.4., “Sampling, Testing, and Inspection.”

- 3.1.3. **Bridge Members.** Primary bridge members include:

- web and flanges of plate, tub, and box girders;
- rolled beams and cover plates;
- floor beam webs and flanges;
- arch ribs and arch tie beams or girders;
- truss members;
- diaphragm members for curved plate girders or beams;
- pier diaphragm members for tub girders;
- splice plates for primary members; and
- any other member designated as “primary” or “main” on the plans.

Secondary bridge members include:

- bracing (diaphragms, cross frames, and lateral bracing); and
- all other miscellaneous bridge items not considered primary bridge members.

- 3.1.4. **Responsibility.** The Contractor is responsible for the correctness and completeness of shop drawings and for the fit of shop and field connections.

3.1.5. **Qualification of Plants and Personnel.**

- 3.1.5.1. **Plants.** Fabrication plants that produce bridge members must be approved in accordance with [DMS-7370](#), "Steel Bridge Member Fabrication Plant Qualification." The Department's MPL has a list of approved bridge member fabrication plants.

Fabrication plants that produce non-bridge steel members listed below must be approved in accordance with [DMS-7380](#), "Steel Non-Bridge Member Fabrication Plant Qualification." The Construction Division maintains a list of approved non-bridge fabrication plants for the following items:

- Roadway Illumination Poles,
- High Mast Illumination Poles,
- High Mast Rings and Support Assemblies,
- Overhead Sign Support Structures,
- Traffic Signal Poles, and
- Intelligent Transportation System (ITS) Poles

The Department will evaluate non-bridge member fabrication plants for competence of the plant, equipment, organization, experience, knowledge, and personnel to produce acceptable work.

- 3.1.5.2. **Personnel.** Provide a QC staff qualified in accordance with the applicable AWS code. Provide an adequate number of qualified QC personnel for each specific production operation. QC must be on-site and independent of production personnel, as the Engineer determines. QC personnel must be proficient in utilizing the applicable plans, specifications, and test methods, and in verifying compliance with the plant QC and production procedures. Welding inspectors must be current AWS Certified Welding Inspectors for bridge member plants, and for non-bridge member plants requiring Department approval per [DMS-7380](#), "Steel Non-Bridge Member Fabrication Plant Qualification." The QC staff must provide inspection of all materials and workmanship before the Department's inspection. Provide the Department inspector with adequate personnel and equipment needed to move material for inspection access. QC is solely the Contractor's responsibility.

- 3.1.5.3. **Nondestructive Testing (NDT).** Personnel performing NDT must be qualified in accordance with the applicable AWS code and the employer's Written Practice. Level III personnel who qualify AS Level I and Level II inspectors must be certified by ASNT for which the NDT Level III is qualified. Testing agencies and individual third-party contractors must also successfully complete periodic audits for compliance, performed by the Department. In addition, ultrasound technicians must pass a hands-on test the Construction Division administers. This will remain current provided they continue to perform testing on Department materials as evidenced by test reports requiring their signature. A technician who fails the hands-on test must wait 6 months before taking the test again. Qualification to perform ultrasonic testing will be revoked when the technician's employment is terminated or when the technician goes 6 months without performing a test on a Department project. The technician must pass a new hands-on test to be re-certified.

- 3.1.5.4. **Welding Procedure Specifications Qualification Testing.** For bridge member fabrication, laboratories performing welding procedure specifications (WPSs) qualified by testing must be approved in accordance with [DMS-7360](#), "Qualification Procedure for Laboratories Performing Welding Procedure Qualification Testing." The Department's MPL has a list of laboratories approved to perform WPS qualification testing.

3.1.6. **Drawings.**

- 3.1.6.1. **Erection Drawings.** Submit erection drawings prepared by a licensed professional engineer, including calculations, for approval in accordance with Item 5, "Control of the Work," at least 4 weeks before erecting any portion of field-spliced (welded or bolted) girders, railroad underpasses, trusses, arches, or other members for which erection drawings are required on the plans. Include drawings and calculations for any temporary structures used to support partially erected members. Erection drawings are not required for rolled I-beam units unless otherwise noted on the plans.

Prepare erection drawings following the procedures outlined in Section 2.2 of the AASHTO/NSBA Steel Bridge Collaboration S10.1. As a minimum, include:

- plan of work area showing structure location relative to supports and all obstructions;
- equipment to be used including allowable load information;
- erection sequence for all pieces;
- member weights and center of gravity location of pieces to be lifted;
- locations of cranes, holding cranes, and temporary supports (falsework), including when to release load from temporary supports and holding cranes;
- details of falsework including specific bracing requirements with maximum allowable design wind speed clearly indicated;
- girder lifting points;
- diaphragm and bracing requirements; and
- minimum connection requirements when more than the standard requirements.

Perform girder erection analyses using UT-Lift and UT-Bridge software available on the Department's website or other suitable commercial software. Ensure temporary stresses in members being erected will not cause permanent damage and that stability is maintained throughout the erection operations. Provide actual input files and output results from UT-Lift and UT-Bridge, or graphical and hard copy results from commercial software programs.

Do not proceed if site conditions differing from those depicted on the approved erection drawings could affect temporary support stresses, erected girders, or public safety in any manner. Revise erection drawings and resubmit to the Engineer for approval before proceeding if site conditions could affect these things.

- 3.1.6.2. **Shop Drawings.** Prepare and electronically submit shop drawings before fabrication for each detail of the general plans requiring the use of structural steel, forgings, wrought iron, or castings as documented in the *Guide to Electronic Shop Drawing Submittal* available on the Bridge Division website and as directed for other items the standard specifications require.

Indicate joint details on shop drawings for all welds. Provide a title block on each sheet in the lower right corner that includes:

- project identification data including federal and state project numbers,
- sheet numbering for the shop drawings,
- name of the structure or stream for bridge structures,
- name of owner or developer,
- name of the fabricator or supplier, and
- name of the Contractor.

Provide one set of 11 × 17-in. approved shop drawings in hardcopy to the Department for the inspector at the fabrication plant.

- 3.1.6.2.1. **Bridge Members.** Prepare drawings in accordance with AASHTO/NSBA Steel Bridge Collaboration G1.3, "Shop Detail Drawing Presentation" unless otherwise approved. Print a bill of material on each sheet, including the Charpy V-Notch (CVN) and fracture-critical requirements, if any, for each piece. Indicate fracture-critical areas of members.

- 3.1.6.2.2. **Non-Bridge Members.** Furnish shop drawings for non-bridge members when required by the plans or pertinent items.

- 3.1.7. **Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs).** Submit WPSs and test reports in accordance with the applicable AWS code to the Construction Division before fabrication begins, and notify the Engineer which procedures will be used for each joint or joint type. Do not begin fabrication until the Engineer approves WPSs.

Post the approved WPSs for the welding being performed on each welding machine, or use another approved method of ensuring the welder has access to the procedure information at all times.

- 3.1.8. **Documentation.** Before beginning fabrication, provide a completed Material Statement Form 1818 (a.k.a. D-9-USA-1) with supporting documentation (such as mill test reports (MTRs)) that the producing mill issues and qualified personnel verifies. Ensure the documentation legibly reflects all information the applicable ASTM specifications require. Supply documents electronically to the Department.

Provide a copy of the shipping or storage invoice, as material is shipped or placed in approved storage that reflects:

- member piece mark identification and calculated weight per piece from the contract drawings,
- number of pieces shipped or in storage,
- total calculated weight for each invoice per bid item, and
- the unique identification number of the shipping or storage invoice.

The inspector's acceptance of material or finished members will not prohibit subsequent rejection if the material or members are found to be damaged or defective. Replace rejected material promptly.

- 3.1.9. **Material Identification.** Assembly-mark individual pieces and issue cutting instructions to the shop using a system that will maintain identity of the original piece.

Identify structural steel by standard and grade of steel. Also differentiate between material toughness requirements (CVN, fracture-critical) as well as any other special physical requirements. In addition, identify structural steel for primary members by mill identification numbers (heat numbers). Use an approved identification system. Use either paint or low-stress stencils to make identification markings on the metal. Mark the material as soon as it enters the shop and carry the markings on all pieces through final fabrication. Transfer the markings before cutting steel for primary members of bridge structures into smaller pieces. Loss of identification marking on any piece, with no other positive identification, or loss of heat number identification on any primary member piece will render the piece unacceptable for use. Unidentifiable material may be approved for use after testing to establish acceptability to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Have an approved testing facility perform testing and a licensed professional engineer sign and seal the results.

3.2. **Welding.**

3.2.1. **Details.**

- 3.2.1.1. **Rolled Edges.** Trim plates with rolled edges used for webs by thermal cutting.

- 3.2.1.2. **Weld Tabs.** Use weld tabs at least 2 in. long for manual and semi-automatic processes, at least 3 in. long for automatic processes, and in all cases at least as long as the thickness of the material being welded. Use longer weld tabs as required for satisfactory work.

- 3.2.1.3. **Weld Termination.** Terminate fillet welds approximately 1/4 in. from the end of the attachment except for galvanized structures and flange-to-web welds, for which the fillet weld must run the full length of the attachment, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

- 3.2.1.4. **No-Paint Areas at Field-Welded Connections.** Keep surfaces within 4 in. of groove welds or within 2 in. of fillet welds free from shop paint.

- 3.2.1.5. **Galvanized Assemblies.** Completely seal all edges of tightly contacting surfaces by welding before galvanizing.

- 3.2.1.6. **Submerged-Arc Welding (SAW).** Do not use hand-held semiautomatic SAW for welding bridge members unless altered to provide automatic guidance or otherwise approved.

- 3.2.1.7. **Tubular Stiffeners for Bridge Members.** Weld in accordance with AWS D1.5, using WPSs qualified based on tests on ASTM A709 Gr. 50W or Gr. 50 steel for non-weathering applications and ASTM A709 Gr. 50W steel for weathering applications.
- 3.2.1.8. **Non-Bridge Member Weathering Steel Welds.** Provide weld metal with atmospheric corrosion resistance and coloring characteristics similar to that of the base metal for weathering steel structures fabricated per AWS D1.1.
- 3.2.2. **Shop Splices.**
- 3.2.2.1. **Shop Splice Locations.** Keep at least 6 in. between shop splices and stiffeners or cross-frames. Obtain approval for shop splices added after shop drawings are approved.
- 3.2.2.2. **Grinding Splice Welds.** Grind shop groove welds in flange plates smooth and flush with the base metal on all surfaces whether the joined parts are of equal or unequal thickness. Grind so the finished grinding marks run in the direction of stress, and keep the metal below the blue brittle range (below 350°F). Groove welds in web plates, except at locations of intersecting welds, need not be ground unless shown on the plans except as required to meet AWS welding code requirements.
- 3.2.3. **Joint Restraint.** Never restrain a joint on both sides when welding.
- 3.2.4. **Stiffener Installation.**
- 3.2.4.1. **Flange Tilt.** Members must meet combined tilt and warpage tolerances before the installation of stiffeners. Cut stiffeners to fit acceptable flange tilt and cupping. Minor jacking or hammering that does not permanently deform the material will be permitted.
- 3.2.4.2. **Stiffeners Near Field Splices.** Tack weld intermediate stiffeners within 12 in. of a welded field splice point in the shop. Weld the stiffeners in the field in accordance with Item 448, "Structural Field Welding," after the splice is made.
- 3.2.5. **Nondestructive Testing (NDT).** Perform magnetic particle testing (MT), radiographic testing (RT), or ultrasonic testing (UT) at the Contractor's expense as specified in D1.5 for bridge structures. The Engineer will periodically witness, examine, verify, and interpret NDT. Additional welds may be designated for NDT on the plans. Retest repaired groove welds per the applicable AWS code after repairs are made and have cooled to ambient temperature. Complete NDT and repairs before assembly of parts into a member, but after any heat-correction of weld distortion.
- 3.2.5.1. **Radiographic Testing.** Radiographs must have a density of at least 2.5 and no more than 3.5, as a radiographer confirms. The density in any single radiograph showing a continuous area of constant thickness must not vary in this area by more than 0.5. Use only ASTM System Class I radiographic film as described in ASTM E1815. Use low-stress stencils to make radiograph location identification marks on the steel.
- 3.2.5.2. **Ultrasonic Testing.** Have UT equipment calibrated yearly by an authorized representative of the equipment manufacturer or by an approved testing laboratory.
- 3.2.5.3. **Magnetic Particle Testing.** Use half-wave rectified DC when using the yoke method unless otherwise approved. Welds may be further evaluated with prod method for detecting centerline cracking.
- 3.2.6. **Testing of Galvanized Weldments.** If problems develop during galvanizing of welded material, the Engineer may require a test of the compatibility of the combined galvanizing and welding procedures in accordance with this Section and may require modification of one or both of the galvanizing and welding procedures.

Prepare a test specimen with a minimum length of 12 in. using the same base material, with the same joint configuration, and using the welding procedure proposed for production work if testing is required. Clean and

galvanize this test specimen using the same conditions and procedure that will be applied to the production galvanizing.

Examine the test specimen after galvanizing. There must be no evidence of excessive buildup of zinc coating over the weld area. Excessive zinc coating buildup will require modification of the galvanizing procedure.

Remove the zinc from the weld area of the test specimen and visually examine the surface. There must be no evidence of loss of weld metal or any deterioration of the base metal due to the galvanizing or welding procedure. Modify the galvanizing or welding procedure as required if there is evidence of deterioration or loss of weld metal, and run a satisfactory retest on the modified procedures before production work. Report procedures and results on the galvanized weldment worksheet provided by the Department.

- 3.3. **Bolt Holes.** Detail holes on shop drawings 1/16 in. larger in diameter than the nominal bolt size shown on the plans unless another hole size is shown on the plans.

Thoroughly clean the contact surfaces of connection parts in accordance with Item 447, "Structural Bolting," before assembling them for hole fabrication. Make holes in primary members full-size (by reaming from a subsize hole, drilling full-size, or punching full-size where permissible) only in assembly unless otherwise approved.

Ream and drill with twist drills guided by mechanical means unless otherwise approved. If subpunching holes, punch them at least 3/16 in. smaller than the nominal bolt size. Submit the proposed procedures for approval to accomplish the work from initial drilling or punching through check assembly when numerically controlled (N/C) equipment is used. Use thermal cutting for holes only with permission of the Engineer. Permission for thermal cutting is not required for making slotted holes, when slotted holes are shown on the plans, by drilling or punching 2 holes and then thermally cutting the straight portion between them. Perform all thermal cutting in accordance with Section 441.3.5.1., "Thermal Cutting."

Slightly conical holes that naturally result from punching operations are acceptable provided they do not exceed the tolerances of S2.1. The tolerance for anchor bolt hole diameter for bridge bearing assemblies is +1/8 in., -0.

- 3.4. **Dimensional Tolerances.** Meet tolerances of the applicable AWS specifications and S2.1 except as modified in this Section.

- 3.4.1. **Rolled Sections.** Use ASTM A6 mill tolerances for rolled sections, except D1.5 camber tolerances apply to rolled sections with a specified camber.

- 3.4.2. **Flange Straightness.** Ensure flanges of completed girders are free of kinks, short bends, and waviness that depart from straightness or the specified camber by more than 1/8 in. in any 10 ft. along the flange. Rolled material must meet this straightness requirement before being laid out or worked. Plates must meet this requirement before assembly into a member. Inspect the surface of the metal for evidence of fracture after straightening a bend or buckle. The Engineer may require nondestructive testing.

- 3.4.3. **Alignment of Deep Webs in Welded Field Connections.** For girders 48 in. deep or deeper, the webs may be slightly restrained while checking compliance with tolerances of S2.1 for lateral alignment at field-welded connections. In the unrestrained condition, webs 48 in. deep or deeper must meet the tolerances of Table 2. Girders under 48 in. deep must meet the alignment tolerances of S2.1.

Table 2
Web Alignment Tolerances for Deep Girders

Web Depth (in.)	Maximum Web Misalignment (in.)
48	1/16
60	1/8
72	1/4
84	5/16
96	5/16
108	3/8
120	7/16
132	7/16
144	1/2

3.4.4. **Bearings.** Correct bearing areas of shoes, beams, and girders using heat, external pressure, or both. Grind or mill only if the actual thickness of the member is not reduced by more than 1/16 in. below the required thickness.

3.4.4.1. **I-Beams, Plate Girders, and Tub Girders.** The plane of the bearing area of beams and girders must be perpendicular to the vertical axis of the member within 1/16 in. in any 24 in.

3.4.4.2. **Closed Box Girders.** Meet these tolerances:

- The plane of the bearing areas of the box girder is perpendicular to the vertical axis of the girder within 1/16 in. across any horizontal dimension of the bearing.
- The planes of the beam supports on the box girder are true to the vertical axis of the supported beams or girders to 1/16 in. in any 24 in.

In the shop, verify the plane of all bearing areas with the box placed on its bearings to field grade, using an approved process for verification.

3.4.4.3. **Shoes.** Meet these tolerances:

- The top bolster has the center 75% of the long dimension (transverse to the girder) true to 1/32 in., with the remainder true to 1/16 in., and is true to 1/32 in. across its entire width in the short dimension (longitudinal to the girder).
- The bottom bolster is true to 1/16 in. across its diagonals.
- For a pin and rocker type expansion shoe, the axis of rotation coincides with the central axis of the pin.
- When the shoe is completely assembled, as the top bolster travels through its full anticipated range, no point in the top bolster plane changes elevation by more than 1/16 in. and the top bolster does not change inclination by more than 1 degree, for the full possible travel.

3.4.4.4. **Beam supports.** Fabricate beam support planes true to the box girder bearing to 1/16 in. in the short direction and true to the vertical axis of the nesting girders to 1/16 in.

3.4.5. **End Connection Angles.** For floor beams and girders with end connection angles, the tolerance for the length back to back of connection angles is $\pm 1/32$ in. Do not reduce the finished thickness of the angles below that shown on the shop drawings if end connections are faced.

3.5. **Other Fabrication Processes.**

3.5.1. **Thermal Cutting.** Use a mechanical guide to obtain a true profile. Hand-cut only where approved. Hand-cutting of radii for beam copes, weld access holes, and width transitions is permitted if acceptable profile and finish are produced by grinding. Provide a surface finish on thermal-cut surfaces, including holes, in accordance with D1.5 requirements for base metal preparation. Obtain approval before using other cutting processes.

- 3.5.2. **Oxygen-Gouging.** Do not oxygen-gouge quenched and tempered (Q&T), normalized, or thermo-mechanically controlled processed (TMCP) steel.
- 3.5.3. **Annealing and Normalizing.** Complete all annealing or normalizing (as defined in ASTM A941) before finished machining, boring, and straightening. Maintain the temperature uniformly throughout the furnace during heating and cooling so the range of temperatures at all points on the member is no more than 100°F.
- 3.5.4. **Machining.** Machine the surfaces of expansion bearings so the travel direction of the tool is in the direction of expansion.
- 3.5.5. **Camber.** Complete cambering in accordance with S2.1 before any heat-curving.
- 3.5.6. **Heat Curving.** Heat-curve in accordance with S2.1. The methods in the AASHTO bridge construction specifications are recommended. Attach cover plates to rolled beams before heat-curving only if the total thickness of one flange and cover plate is less than 2-1/2 in. and the radius of curvature is greater than 1,000 ft. Attach cover plates for other rolled beams only after heat-curving is completed. Locate and attach connection plates, diaphragm stiffeners, and bearing stiffeners after curving, unless girder shrinkage is accounted for.
- 3.5.7. **Bending of Quenched and Tempered Steels.** The cold-bending radius limitations for HPS 70W in S2.1 apply to all Q&T steels.
- 3.6. **Nonconformance Reports (NCRs).** Submit an NCR to the Engineer for approval when the requirements of this Item are not met. Submit NCRs in accordance with the Construction Division's NCR guidelines document. Have readily available access to the services of a licensed professional engineer experienced in steel structures design and fabrication. This licensed professional engineer may be responsible for reviewing potentially structurally deficient members in accordance with the NCR guidelines document. Receive Department approval before beginning repairs. Perform all repair work in strict compliance with the approved NCR and repair procedure.
- 3.7. **Shop Assembly.**
- 3.7.1. **General Shop Assembly.** Shop-assemble field connections of primary members of trusses, arches, continuous beam spans, bents, towers (each face), plate girders, field connections of floor beams and stringers (including for railroad structures), field-bolted diaphragms for curved plate girders and railroad underpasses, and rigid frames. Field-bolted cross-frames and rolled-section diaphragms do not require shop assembly. Complete fabrication, welding (except for shear studs), and field splice preparation before members are removed from shop assembly. Obtain approval for any deviation from this procedure. The Contractor is responsible for accurate geometry.
- Use a method and details of preassembly consistent with the erection procedure shown on the erection plans and camber diagrams. The sequence of assembly may start from any location in the structure and proceed in one or both directions. An approved method of sequential geometry control is required unless the full length of the structure is assembled.
- Verify by shop assembly the fit of all bolted and welded field connections between bent cap girders and plate girders or between plate girders and floor beams.
- Do not measure horizontal curvature and vertical camber for final acceptance until all welding and heating operations are completed and the steel has cooled to a uniform temperature. Check horizontal curvature and vertical camber in a no-load condition.
- 3.7.2. **Bolted Field Connections.** Each shop assembly, including camber, alignment, accuracy of holes, and fit of milled joints, must be approved before the assembly is dismantled.

Assemble with milled ends of compression members in full bearing. Assemble non-bearing connections to the specified gap. Ream all subsize holes to the specified size while the connections are assembled, or drill full size while the connections are assembled. Notify the Engineer before shipping if fill plates or shims are added. Adding or increasing the thickness of shims or fill plates in bearing connections requires approval. Use drift pins and snug-tight bolts during the drilling process to ensure all planes of the connection (webs and flanges) can be assembled simultaneously. Do not use tack welds to secure plates while drilling.

Secure parts not completely bolted in the shop with temporary bolts to prevent damage in shipment and handling. Never use tack welds in place of temporary bolts.

Match-mark connecting parts in field connections using low-stress stencils in accordance with the diagram in the erection drawings.

- 3.7.3. **Welded Field Connections.** Mill or grind bevels for groove welds. Do not cut into the web when cutting the flange bevel adjacent to the web. End preparation, backing, and tolerances for girder splices must be in accordance with Item 448, "Structural Field Welding." Details for all other field-welds must conform to the applicable AWS code unless otherwise shown on the plans.

In the shop, prepare ends of beams or girders to be field-welded taking into account their relative positions in the finished structure due to grade, camber, and curvature. Completely shop-assemble and check each splice. Match-mark the splice while it is assembled with low-stress stencils in accordance with the diagram in the erection drawings.

3.8. **Finish and Painting.**

- 3.8.1. **Shop Painting.** Perform shop painting of bridge members as required in [DMS-8104](#), "Paint, Shop Application for Steel Bridge Members." Grind corners on new steel items to be painted (except for the coatings on box and tub girder interiors) that are sharp or form essentially 90° angles to an approximately 1/16 in. flat surface before blast cleaning. (A corner is the intersection of 2 plane faces.) This requirement does not apply to punched or drilled holes. Do not omit shop paint to preserve original markings.

Ensure painted faying surfaces meet the required slip and creep coefficients for bolted connections as outlined in [DMS-8104](#), "Paint, Shop Application for Steel Bridge Members."

Use a Class A slip (minimum slip coefficient of 0.33) if no slip coefficient or corresponding surface condition is specified. Perform all required testing at no expense to the Department.

Surface preparation and painting the interiors of Tub Girders and Closed Boxes is in accordance with [DMS-8104](#), "Paint, Shop Application for Steel Bridge Members."

- 3.8.2. **Weathering Steel.** Provide an SSPC-SP 6 blast in the shop to all fascia surfaces of unpainted weathering steel beams. Fascia surfaces include:

- exterior sides of outermost webs and undersides of bottom flanges of plate girders and rolled beams,
- all outer surfaces of tub girders and box girders,
- all surfaces of truss members,
- webs and undersides of bottom flanges of plate diaphragms,
- bottom surfaces of floor beams, and
- any other surfaces designated as "fascia" on the plans.

Do not mark fascia surfaces. Use one of the following methods as soon as possible to remove any markings or any other foreign material that adheres to the steel during fabrication and could inhibit the formation of oxide film:

- SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning,"
- SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning,"
- SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning," and

■ SSPC-SP 7, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."

Do not use acids to remove stains or scales. Feather out touched-up areas over several feet.

- 3.8.3. **Machined Surfaces.** Clean and coat machine-finished surfaces that are in sliding contact, particularly pins and pinholes, with a non-drying, water-repellent grease-type material containing rust-inhibitive compounds. Ensure the coating material contains no ingredients that might damage the steel. Protect machined surfaces from abrasive blasting.
- 3.9. **Handling and Storage of Materials.** Prevent damage when storing or handling girders or other materials. Remove or repair material damaged by handling devices or improper storage by acceptable means in accordance with ASTM A6 and the applicable AWS code.
- Place stored materials on skids or acceptable dunnage above the ground. Keep materials clean. Shore girders and beams to keep them upright and free of standing water. Place support skids close enough to prevent excessive deflection in long members such as columns. Do not stack completed girders or beams at the jobsite.
- Protect structural steel from salt water or other corrosive environments during storage and transit.
- 3.10. **Marking and Shipping.** Mark all structural members in accordance with the erection drawings. If a surface is painted, make the marks over the paint. Do not use impact-applied stencils to mark painted surfaces.
- Mark the weight directly on all members weighing more than 3 tons.
- Keep material clean and free from injury during loading, transportation, unloading, and storage. Pack bolts of each length and diameter, and loose nuts or washers of each size, separately and ship them in boxes, crates, kegs, or barrels. Plainly mark a list and description of the contents on the outside of each package.
- 3.11. **Field Erection.** Do not lift and place any steel member, including girders and diaphragms, over an open highway or other open travel way unless otherwise approved. Do not allow traffic to travel under erected members until sufficiently stable as shown on approved erection drawings.
- 3.11.1. **Pre-Erection Conference.** Schedule and attend a pre-erection conference with the Engineer at least 7 days before commencing steel erection operations. Do not install falsework or perform any erection operations before the meeting.
- 3.11.2. **Methods and Equipment.** Do not tack-weld parts instead of using erection bolts. Do not tack-weld parts to hold them in place for bolting. Provide falsework, tools, machinery, and appliances, including drift pins and erection bolts. Provide enough drift pins, 1/32 in. larger than the connection bolts, to fill at least 1/4 of the bolt holes for primary connections. Use erection bolts of the same diameter as the connection bolts.
- Securely tie, brace, or shore steel beams or girders immediately after erection as shown on the erection drawings. Maintain bracing or shoring until the diaphragms are in place and as specified in the erection drawings. Protect railroad, roadway, and marine traffic underneath previously erected girders or beams from falling objects associated with other construction activities.
- Only welders certified or working directly under the supervision of a foreman certified in accordance with Item 448, "Structural Field Welding," may handle torches when applying heat to permanent structural steel members.
- 3.11.3. **Falsework.** Construct falsework in accordance with the erection plan. Construct foundations for shore towers as shown on erection drawings. Do not use timber mats with deteriorated timbers or soil to construct shore tower foundations. Notify the Engineer of completed falsework to obtain approval before opening roadway to traffic or starting girder erection activities. Ensure falsework is protected from potential vehicle impact.

Inspect and maintain falsework daily. Use screw jacks or other approved methods to control vertical adjustment of falsework to minimize the use of shims.

3.11.4. **Handling and Assembly.** Accurately assemble all parts as shown on the plans and the approved shop drawings. Verify match-marks. Handle parts carefully to prevent bending or other damage. Do not hammer if doing so damages or distorts members. Do not weld any member for transportation or erection unless noted on the plans or approved by the Engineer.

3.11.4.1. **Welded Connections.** Weld flange splices to 50% of their thickness and meet the minimum erection bracing and support requirements before releasing the erection cranes, as shown on the plans and on the approved erection plans. Field-weld in accordance with Item 448, "Structural Field Welding."

3.11.4.2. **Bolted Connections.** Before releasing the erection cranes:

- install 50% of the bolts in the top and bottom flanges and the web with all nuts finger-tight,
- meet the minimum erection bracing and support requirements shown on the plans and on the approved erection plans, and
- install top lateral bracing across the connection for tub girders, and fully tension the bolts connecting the bracing to the top flanges.

Install high-strength bolts, including erection bolts, in accordance with Item 447, "Structural Bolting." Clean bearing and faying surfaces for bolted connections in accordance with Item 447, "Structural Bolting." Clean the areas of the outside ply under washers, nuts, and bolt heads before bolt installation. Ensure the required faying surface condition is present at the time of bolting.

3.11.5. **Misfits.** Correct minor misfits. Ream no more than 10% of the holes in a plate connection (flange or web), and ensure no single hole is more than 1/8 in. larger than the nominal bolt diameter. Submit proposed correction methods for members with defects that exceed these limits or prevent the proper assembly of parts. Straighten structural members in accordance with S2.1. Make all corrections in the presence of the Engineer at no expense to the Department. Do not remove and reweld gusset plates without approval.

3.11.6. **Bearing and Anchorage Devices.** Place all bearing devices such as elastomeric pads, castings, bearing plates, or shoes on properly finished bearing areas with full and even bearing on the concrete. Place metallic bearing devices on 1/4 in.-thick preformed fabric pads manufactured in accordance with [DMS-6160](#), "Water Stops, Nylon-Reinforced Neoprene Sheet, and Elastomeric Pads," to the dimensions shown on the plans. Provide holes in the pad that are no more than 1/4 in. larger than the bolt diameter.

Build the concrete bearing area up to the correct elevation once it has been placed below grade using mortar that meets Item 420, "Concrete Substructures," and provide adequate curing. Use only mortar for build-ups between 1/8 in. and 3/8 in. thick. Use galvanized steel shims or other approved shim materials in conjunction with mortar if the bearing area must be raised more than 3/8 in.

Provide at least 75% contact of flange to shoe with no separation greater than 1/32 in. for beams and girders. Make corrections using heat or pressure in accordance with S2.1, or with galvanized shims. Correct small irregularities by grinding.

Provide at least 85% contact between the rocker plate and the base plate. Adjust the location of slotted holes in expansion bearings for the prevailing temperature. Adjust the nuts on the anchor bolts at the expansion ends of spans to permit free movement of the span. Provide lock nuts or burr the threads.

Remove all foreign matter from sliding or machine-finished surfaces before placing them in the structure.

Restore distorted bearing pads or expansion bearings to an equivalent 70°F position after completion of all welded or bolted splices, using an approved method of relieving the load on the bearing devices.

3.11.7. **Erecting Forms.** Do not erect forms until all welding or bolting is complete and the unit is positioned and properly set on the bearings unless otherwise noted on the plans.

- 3.11.8. **Field Finish.** Paint in accordance with Item 446, "Field Cleaning and Painting Steel." Restore weathering steel that will remain unpainted to a uniform appearance by solvent cleaning, hand cleaning, power brush, or blast cleaning after all welding and slab concrete placement has been completed. Remove from all unpainted weathering steel fascia surfaces (see Section 441.3.8.2., "Weathering Steel,") any foreign material, including markings, that adheres to the steel and could inhibit formation of oxide film as soon as possible. Feather out touched-up areas over several feet. Do not use acids to remove stains or scales.

4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly but will be subsidiary to pertinent Items.

Item 442

Metal for Structures



1. DESCRIPTION

Provide structural steel, high-strength bolts, forgings, steel castings, iron castings, wrought iron, steel pipe and tubing, aluminum castings and tubing, or other metals used in structures, except reinforcing steel and metal culvert pipe.

2. MATERIALS

Furnish mill test reports (MTRs), supplemental test documentation, and certifications required by this and other pertinent Items.

2.1. **Structural Steel.** The Engineer may sample and test steel in accordance with ASTM A370.

2.1.1. **Bridge Structures.** Provide the grade of ASTM A709 steel shown on the plans. Grade 50W, 50S, or HPS 50W may be substituted for Grade 50 at no additional cost to the Department. Use Zone 1 if no AASHTO temperature zone is shown on the plans.

2.1.2. **Non-Bridge Structures.**

2.1.2.1. **Steel Classifications.** Provide the types and grades of steel listed in this Section unless otherwise shown on the plans.

2.1.2.1.1. **Carbon Steel.** Meet ASTM A36.

2.1.2.1.2. **Low-Alloy Steel.** Meet the requirements of one of the following standards:

- ASTM A529 Grade 50;
- ASTM A572 Grade 50 or 55;
- ASTM A588;
- ASTM A709 Grade 50, 50S, 50W, or HPS 50W; or
- ASTM A992.

Specify ASTM A6 supplemental requirement S18, "Maximum Tensile Strength," for material used for sign, signal, and luminaire supports.

2.1.2.2. **Impact Testing.** Tension members and components of the following structure types, if more than 1/2 in. thick. Other members designated on the plans must meet the Charpy V-notch (CVN) requirements of Table 1:

- base plates for roadway illumination assemblies, traffic signal pole assemblies, high mast illumination poles, camera poles, and overhead sign supports;
- pole mounting plates, arm mounting plates, and clamp-on plates for traffic signal pole assemblies;
- arm stiffeners, pole gussets, and stiffeners for traffic signal pole long mast arm assemblies (50 ft. to 65 ft.);
- pole shafts, ground sleeves, and handhole frames for high mast illumination poles;
- W-columns, tower pipes, multiple-sided shafts, tower pipe and multiple-sided shaft connection plates, chord angles, chord splice plates or angles, and truss bearing angles for truss type overhead sign supports; and

- pipe posts, pipe arms, post and arm flange plates, and handhole frames for monotube overhead sign supports.

Table 1
CVN Requirements for Non-Bridge Steel

Material	Thickness	Minimum CVN Toughness
ASTM A36, A53, A242, A500, A501, A709 Gr. 36, any other steel with minimum specified yield point below 40 ksi	up to 4"	15 ft.-lb. at 70°F
ASTM A572, ¹ A588, ¹ A633, ¹ any other steel with minimum specified yield point between 40 and 65 ksi, inclusive	up to 2"	15 ft.-lb. at 70°F
	over 2" to 4", mechanically fastened	15 ft.-lb. at 70°F
	over 2" to 4", welded	20 ft.-lb. at 70°F
Any steel with minimum specified yield point over 65 ksi and under 90 ksi ²	up to 2-1/2"	20 ft.-lb. at 50°F
	over 2-1/2" to 4", mechanically fastened	20 ft.-lb. at 50°F
	over 2-1/2" to 4", welded	25 ft.-lb. at 50°F

1. Reduce the testing temperature by 15°F for each 10-ksi increment or fraction thereof above 65 ksi if the yield point of the material given on the MTR exceeds 65 ksi.
2. Reduce the testing temperature by 15°F for each 10-ksi increment or fraction thereof above 85 ksi if the yield point of the material given on the MTR exceeds 85 ksi.

Use the (H) frequency of testing for material with minimum specified yield point up to 50 ksi. Use the (P) frequency of testing for material with minimum specified yield point over 50 ksi. Ensure steel is sampled and tested in accordance with ASTM A673.

2.1.3. Other Components.

2.1.3.1. **Miscellaneous Bridge Components.** Provide steel that meets ASTM A36, A709 Grade 36, or A500 Grade B for members such as steel bearing components not bid under other Items, steel diaphragms for use with concrete bridges, and armor and finger joints, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

2.1.3.2. **Shear Connectors and Anchors.** Provide cold-drawn bars for stud shear connectors, slab anchors, and anchors on armor and finger joints that meet the requirements of ASTM A108, Grade 1010, 1015, 1018, or 1020, either semi-killed or killed, and have the tensile properties given in Table 2 after drawing or finishing. Determine tensile properties in accordance with ASTM A370.

Table 2
Minimum Tensile Properties for Bar Stock

Tensile strength	60 ksi
Yield strength	50 ksi
Elongation	20% (2")
Reduction of area	50%

Provide certification from the manufacturer that the studs or anchors as delivered have the required material properties.

2.1.3.3. **Fasteners.** Provide high-strength bolts that meet ASTM A325 or A490 as shown on the plans. The Department may sample high-strength bolts, nuts, and washers for structural connections in accordance with [Tex-719-I](#).

Follow the requirements of Item 447, "Structural Bolting," for tests, test reports, and supplemental requirements for high-strength bolts, nuts, and washers.

Use bolts that meet ASTM A307 and nuts that meet ASTM A563 when ASTM A325 or A490 bolts are not shown on the plans.

2.1.3.4. **Slip-Resistant Deck Plates.** Furnish steel for deck plates that meets ASTM A786 and one of A242, A588, or A709 Gr. 50W. State the type and trade name of material to be used on the shop drawings.

- 2.1.3.5. **Rail Posts.** Provide material for rail posts that meets ASTM A36 or ASTM A709 Grade 36 unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- 2.2. **Steel Forgings.** Provide steel forgings for pins, rollers, trunnions, or other forged parts that meet ASTM A668, Class C, D, F, or G, as shown on the plans. For pins 4 in. or smaller in diameter for non-railroad structures, material that meets ASTM A108, Grades 1016 to 1030, with a minimum yield strength of 36 ksi, may be used instead.
- 2.3. **Steel Castings.** Provide steel castings that meet ASTM A27, Grade 70-36.
- 2.4. **Iron Castings.** Provide iron castings that are true to pattern in form and dimensions; free from pouring faults, sponginess, cracks, blow holes, and other defects in positions affecting their strength and value for the service intended; and meet the standards shown in Table 3.

Table 3
Standards for Iron Castings

Casting Material	ASTM Standard	Grade or Class
Gray iron	A48	35B
Malleable iron	A47	32510
Ductile iron	A536	70-50-05

- 2.5. **Steel Tubing.** Provide steel tubing that meets ASTM A500, Grade B unless otherwise shown on the plans. Tubing that meets API Standard 5L, Grade X52 may be used if produced by a mill listed in the standard API specifications as authorized to produce pipe with the API monogram. Hydrostatic tests are not required for API 5L steel, and instead of an MTR, the manufacturer may furnish a certificate for each lot or shipment certifying the tubing meets the requirements of this Section.
- 2.6. **Pipe Rail.** "Pipe" includes special extruded and bent shapes. Provide pipe that is rolled, extruded, or cold-pressed from a round pipe or flat plate, and of the section shown on the plans.
- Ensure the design of the cold press and dies results in a pipe of uniform section-free from die marks. Cut the pipe to the lengths required once it has been formed to the required section. Make the end cuts and notches at the angles to the axis of the pipe required to produce vertical end faces and plumb posts when required by the plans. Provide a neat and workmanlike finish when cutting and notching pipe.
- 2.7. **Aluminum.** Provide aluminum materials that meet the standards shown in Table 4 unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Table 4
Aluminum Standards

Material	ASTM Standard	Alloy-Temper
Castings	B108	A444.0-T4
Extrusions	B221	6061-T6
Sheet or plate	B209	6061-T6

When testing is required, cut test specimens from castings from the lower 14 in. of the tension flange, but not at the junction of the rib or base. Flatten the curved surfaces before machining. Provide standard test specimens in conformance with ASTM E8.

3. CONSTRUCTION

- 3.1. **Fabrication, Erection, and Painting.** Fabricate, weld, and erect structural metal in accordance with Item 441, "Steel Structures," Item 447, "Structural Bolting," Item 448, "Structural Field Welding," and the applicable AWS welding code. Paint in accordance with Item 446, "Field Cleaning and Painting Steel." Aluminum or galvanized steel members do not require painting unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- 3.2. **Galvanizing.** Galvanize fabricated steel items, steel castings, bolts, nuts, screws, washers, and other miscellaneous hardware in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing." Galvanizing is not required unless specified.

4. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by the pound of structural metal furnished and placed in a complete structure not including the weight of erection bolts, paint, or weld metal.

This is a plans quantity measurement Item. The quantity to be paid is the quantity shown in the proposal unless modified by Article 9.2., "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

The maximum percent variance from the plans quantity will be as given in Table 5.

Table 5
Percent Variance

Quantity	Variance
Over 1,000,000 lb.	1/2%
100,000 through 1,000,000 lb.	1%
Under 100,000 lb.	1-1/2%

If the requests for increases in sizes or weights of members are approved, measurement will be made on the sizes or weights shown on the plans.

Castings, bearing plates, anchor bolts, drains, deck plates, armor and finger joints, and other metal for which no separate measurement is specified will be included in the total quantity of structural steel.

The weights of rolled materials (such as structural shapes and plate) will be computed on the basis of nominal weights and dimensions using measurements shown on the plans. Deductions will not be made for material that is removed for copes, clips, planing, or weld preparation. The weight of castings will be computed from the dimensions shown on the approved shop drawings. Shoes will be measured by the weights shown on the plans.

Weight of high-strength fasteners will be based on Table 6. Weight of other metal will be based on Table 7.

Splices will be measured as follows:

- No additional weight will be allowed for weld metal in a welded splice.
- Where a bolted splice is permitted as an alternate for a welded splice, measurement will be made on the basis of a welded splice.
- Where a bolted splice is required, the weight of the splice material, bolt heads, washers, and nuts will be measured with no deduction for holes.

Table 6
Pay Weight for High-Strength Fasteners, Pounds per Hundred Units

Diameter	Item		
	Bolt heads	Nuts	Washers
3/4"	15	19	4.8
7/8"	23	30	7.0
1"	32	43	9.4
1-1/8"	45	59	11
1-1/4"	64	79	14

Table 7
Pay Weight for Metals

Material	Weight (lb./cu. in.)
Steel	0.2836
Cast iron	0.2604
Wrought iron	0.2777

5. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Structural Steel" of the type (Rolled Beam, Plate Girder, Tub Girder, Box Girder, Railroad Through-Girder, Railroad Deck-Girder, Miscellaneous Bridge, Miscellaneous Non-Bridge) specified. This price is full compensation for materials, fabrication, transportation, erection, paint, painting, galvanizing, equipment, tools, labor, and incidentals.

Item 445

Galvanizing



1. DESCRIPTION

Galvanize or repair galvanizing on metal items.

2. MATERIALS

Provide galvanized metal items that meet the standards in Table 1.

Table 1
Galvanizing Standards

Item	Standard
Fabricated items, rolled, pressed, or forged steel shapes, plates, pipes, tubular items, and bars	ASTM A123
Steel or iron castings	ASTM A153, Class A
Bolts, nuts, screws, washers, and other miscellaneous hardware	ASTM A153, Class C or D or ASTM B695, Class 50
Miscellaneous fasteners	ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 8
Rail elements for metal beam guard fence or bridge railing	AASHTO M 180
Permanent metal deck forms, supporting angles, and incidental items	ASTM A653, Coating Designation G165

3. CONSTRUCTION

- 3.1. **General.** Provide for proper filling, venting, and draining during cleaning and galvanizing if fabricated members or assemblies are required to be hot-dip galvanized. Provide drain holes or slots as required, except where prohibited by the plans. Provide a surface finish on the thermal-cut drain holes or slots in accordance with AWS D1.1 requirements for base metal preparation. Drain to the small end of tapered sections that are assembled using slip-joint splices. Ensure cleaning and galvanizing does not produce hydrogen embrittlement.

Remove weld flux, weld slag, and any other weld residue or impurities before galvanizing. Before galvanizing material 1/4 in. or greater in thickness:

- remove all sharp burrs, and
- chamfer to approximately 1/16 in. all edges.

- 3.2. **Painting Galvanized Materials.** Provide a paint system if painting is specified on galvanized materials in accordance with [DMS-8102](#), "Paint Systems for Galvanized Steel." Follow all manufacturer instructions for surface preparation and application including the following:

- 3.2.1. **Surface Preparation.** Do not water-quench or chromate-quench galvanized surfaces to be painted. Prepare the surface in accordance with ASTM D6386. Apply coating within 12 hr. of cleaning. Re-clean the surface if more than 12 hr. elapse before initial painting.

- 3.2.2. **Coating Application.** Ensure the coating is smooth, even, continuous, and free of drips, runs, sags, holidays, wrinkles, or other coating defects. Ensure the coating has a uniform appearance within all portions of the painted piece and all related pieces and components of a project. Ensure all repairs are smooth, even, and visually match the remainder of the coated piece by use of feathering and other appropriate techniques to avoid sharp transitions.

- 3.3. **Galvanizing Weldments.** If problems develop during galvanizing of welded material, the Engineer may require a compatibility test of the combined galvanizing and welding procedures in accordance with Section 441.3.2.6., "Testing of Galvanized Weldments," and may require modification of one or both of the galvanizing and welding procedures.
- 3.4. **Workmanship.**
- 3.4.1. **Coverage.** Bare spots no more than 1/8 in. across are acceptable unless numerous. Repair larger bare spots in accordance with Section 445.3.5., "Repairs." Local runs or drips of zinc coating are acceptable unless they interfere with the intended use of the product. Carefully remove plainly visible excessive zinc accumulations.
- 3.4.2. **Adhesion.** Tap the coated area with a small hammer to test coating adhesion. The coating is acceptable if it is not brittle and does not scale or flake.
- 3.4.3. **Appearance.**
- 3.4.3.1. **White Rust.** A white powdery residue indicates moisture. Remove heavy layers of white rust that have caused the coating to pit. Light coatings may remain unless the Engineer requires chemical removal. Remove white rust from articles that will be in direct contact with soil.
- 3.4.3.2. **Red Rust.** Red rust on galvanized items indicates uncoated areas. See Section 445.3.4.1., "Coverage," for acceptance criteria.
- 3.4.3.3. **Alligator Cracking or Spider Webbing.** The composition of the base metal may cause dark lines resembling alligator skin. See Section 445.3.4.2., "Adhesion," to determine whether the coating is acceptable.
- 3.4.3.4. **Dull Gray Coating.** The composition of the base metal can cause a dull gray color. See Section 445.3.4.2., "Adhesion," to determine whether the coating is acceptable.
- 3.4.4. **Coating Thickness.** Galvanize to the thickness specified. Use [Tex-728-I](#) to determine coating thickness.
- 3.5. **Repairs.** Use zinc-based solders, sprayed zinc, or zinc-rich paints for repairs in accordance with this Section.
- 3.5.1. **Materials.**
- 3.5.1.1. **Zinc-Based Solders.** Solders used in rod form or as powders:
 - zinc-tin-lead alloys with liquidus temperatures in the range of 446°F to 500°F or
 - zinc-cadmium alloys with liquidus temperatures in the range of 518°F to 527°F.
- 3.5.1.2. **Sprayed Zinc (Metallizing).** Zinc coating applied by spraying with droplets of molten metal using wire, ribbon, or powder processes.
- 3.5.1.3. **Organic Zinc-Rich Paints.** Zinc-rich paints based on organic binders that meet the requirements of [DMS-8103](#), "Galvanizing Repair Paints." The Department's MPL has a list of approved repair paints for galvanized coatings.
- 3.5.2. **Repair Processes.**
- 3.5.2.1. **Zinc-Based Solders.** Remove moisture, oil, grease, dirt, corrosion products, and welding slag or flux from surfaces to be repaired. Clean surface to white metal by wire-brushing, light grinding, or mild blasting extending into the surrounding undamaged galvanized coating. Preheat cleaned areas to at least 600°F, but not more than 750°F. Wire-brush while heating and evenly distribute a layer of zinc solder. Flush the repaired area with water or wipe with a damp cloth to remove flux residue when repair is completed.

- 3.5.2.2. **Sprayed Zinc (Metallizing).** Remove oil, grease, corrosion products, and any welding slag or flux from surfaces to be repaired, and ensure the surfaces are dry. Clean surface to white metal by wire-brushing, light grinding, or mild blasting extending into the surrounding undamaged galvanized coating. Apply coating by metal-spraying pistols fed with either zinc wire, ribbon, or powder. Provide a coating that is uniform and free of lumps, coarse areas, or loose particles.
- 3.5.2.3. **Organic Zinc-Rich Paints.** Remove oil, grease, corrosion products, and welding slag or flux from surfaces to be repaired, and ensure the surfaces are clean and dry. Clean surface to near-white metal by wire-brushing, light grinding, or mild blasting extending into the surrounding undamaged coating to provide a smooth repair. Spray or brush-apply the paint to the prepared area in accordance with the paint manufacturer's instructions to attain the required dry-film thickness. Provide multiple passes when using spray application.
- 3.6. **Repair Coating Thickness.** Measure thickness in the repaired area using [Tex-728-I](#) after completing repair and cooling or curing. The minimum thickness required is the same as that required for the specified galvanizing. However, if the repair uses zinc-rich paints, the minimum coating thickness is 50% higher than the specified galvanizing thickness but not greater than 4.0 mils.

4. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

The work performed, materials furnished, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals will not be measured or paid for directly but will be considered subsidiary to pertinent Items.

Item 450

Railing



1. DESCRIPTION

Construct railing of concrete, steel, aluminum, or a combination of these materials, including necessary anchorage for the railing on bridges, culverts, walls, or other structures as shown on the plans.

2. MATERIALS

Use materials that conform to requirements of the following Items.

- Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete,"
- Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete,"
- Item 441, "Steel Structures,"
- Item 442, "Metal for Structures,"
- Item 445, "Galvanizing," and
- Item 540, "Metal Beam Guard Fence."

Provide an approved Type III, Class C epoxy or an epoxy of the type and class stated on the plans where epoxy anchors are allowed or required for installing drilled and epoxied rail anchorage reinforcement or rail anchor bolts in accordance with [DMS-6100](#), "Epoxyes and Adhesives." Use other materials if shown on the plans. Provide only dual cartridge epoxy systems mixed with a static mixing nozzle supplied by the epoxy adhesive manufacturer and dispensed with a tool supplied by the epoxy adhesive manufacturer. Do not use bulk epoxyes. Drill and install anchorage reinforcement or anchor bolts to the embedment depth shown on the plans or the depth the manufacturer recommends, whichever is deeper. No additional payment will be made for providing embedment deeper than shown on the plans. Select an embedment depth capable of developing the yield strength of the steel anchor based on the product literature for the epoxy and steel anchor being used if no resistance or embedment depth is specified on the plans. Use 60 ksi as the yield strength for reinforcing steel.

3. CONSTRUCTION

Construct railing in accordance with details, alignment, and grade designated on the plans. Do not place railing until falsework or formwork, if any, for the span has been released unless otherwise directed. Adhere to the schedule restrictions for Placing Bridge Rails and Opening to Construction Traffic in Item 422, "Concrete Superstructures." Notify the Engineer after completion of the following steps and obtain approval of work before proceeding to the next step: placing rail reinforcement and pre-pour clear cover checks.

Ensure expansion joints in the railing will function properly before placing concrete.

Furnish either steel or aluminum, but not both, for the entire Contract if the plans allow either steel or aluminum options for a particular railing type.

Install epoxy adhesive anchorages in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions including hole size, drilling equipment and method, hole cleaning equipment and method, mixing and dispensing epoxy, and anchor insertion. Do not alter the manufacturer's mixing nozzle or dispenser. Anchorage bars or bolts must be clean and free of grease, oil, or any other foreign material. Demonstrate hole cleaning method to the Engineer for approval and continue the approved process for all anchorage locations. Do not weld to an anchor bar or anchor bolt that is anchored with epoxy adhesive. Do not expose rail to traffic until epoxy adhesive has obtained full cure in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

3.1. **Metal Railing.**

3.1.1. **General.** Furnish metal beam rail elements in accordance with Item 540, "Metal Beam Guard Fence."

Fabricate and erect metal railing according to the pertinent provisions of Item 441, "Steel Structures," and the requirements of this Item.

Prepare and submit for approval the required shop or erection drawings in accordance with Item 441, "Steel Structures," when the plans require. Show all splice locations and details on the shop or erection drawings. Splice members only as provided on the plans.

Field-weld when required in accordance with Item 448, "Structural Field Welding."

3.1.2. **Fabrication.** Fabricate metal railing and post panels in sections conforming to the details shown on the plans and field-verified lines and grades. Fabricate adjacent sections so they will accurately engage each other in the field. Match-mark each pair of sections so they can be erected in the same position they were fabricated.

Fabricate metal rail elements included as part of the railing system to the dimensions and cross-sections shown on the plans and within a tolerance of 1/4 in. per 10 feet in the straightness of either edge. Joint and connect metal rail elements to the rail posts as shown on the plans, lapping metal rail elements in the direction of traffic in the adjacent lane. Bolts and nuts for metal railing should meet requirements of ASTM A307 and be galvanized in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Fabricate aluminum in accordance with AWS D1.2.

Heat aluminum materials other than castings to a temperature up to 400°F for no more than 30 min. to facilitate bending or straightening.

3.1.3. **Castings.** Provide permanent mold castings of the materials specified that are true to pattern in form and dimensions and of uniform quality and condition. Castings must be free from cracks and defects such as blowholes, porosity, hard-spots, or shrinkage that could affect their suitability for use. Repair minor defects in aluminum castings by an approved inert gas-welding process. Ensure finished castings are free of burrs, fins, discoloration, and mold marks and that they have a uniform appearance and texture.

Produce castings under radiographic control sufficient to establish and verify a product free from harmful internal defects. Heat-treat the entire lot of castings to the specified temper when required.

Permanently mark the heat or lot number on the web or top of the base of all castings. Furnish mill test reports showing the heat or lot number, chemical composition, tensile strength, elongation, and number of pieces for each casting heat or lot. For aluminum castings, a heat or lot should consist of at least 1,000 lb. of trimmed castings when produced from batch type furnaces, or 2,000 lb. when produced from a continuous furnace during a period of no more than 8 consecutive hours. Furnish the entire number of acceptable posts cast from each heat or lot except when a portion is required to complete a project.

3.1.4. **Corrosion Protection.** Galvanize all portions of steel railing after fabrication in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing," unless otherwise noted on the plans. Apply appearance coat to galvanized surface in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing," when shown on the plans. When painting is specified in place of galvanizing, shop paint steel in accordance with Item 441, "Steel Structures." Repair any damage to galvanized or painted surfaces after erection in accordance with Items 445, "Galvanizing," and Item 446, "Field Cleaning and Painting Steel," respectively.

Before final acceptance, clean surfaces of aluminum and galvanized steel railing not shown to be painted to remove extrusion marks, grease, dirt, and all other surface contaminants.

3.1.5. **Storage.** Store railing materials above the ground on platforms, skids, or other supports, and keep them free from grease, dirt, and contact with dissimilar metals. Avoid scratching, marring, denting, discoloring, or otherwise damaging the railing.

3.2. **Concrete Railing.** Provide concrete portions of railing in accordance with the requirements of Item 420, "Concrete Substructures," and Item 422, "Concrete Superstructures." Construct forms so the railing line and grade can be checked after the concrete has been placed but before initial set. Do not disturb the form alignment during finish floating of the railing tops. Exercise particular care in other construction to avoid disturbing or vibrating the span with the newly placed railing.

Provide precast members conforming to Item 424, "Precast Concrete Structural Members (Fabrication)."

Slipform construction of railing is permitted unless otherwise shown on the plans. Demonstrate slipforming method showing line and grade of concrete surfaces can be consistently obtained and clear cover outside reinforcing steel be maintained at all times. Stop slipforming railing if specified concrete clear cover is not obtained or appearance of rail is off line and grade.

Do not slipform railing with cast-in-place anchor bolts unless noted otherwise.

Provide additional reinforcing as needed to prevent movement of the reinforcement cage. Clear cover and epoxy coating requirements for additional reinforcement are the same as shown for the rail reinforcement. The rail reinforcing cage may be tack welded to the rail anchorage reinforcement provided the rail and anchorage reinforcement are not epoxy coated and weld locations measured along the rail are no closer than 3 ft. Tie all bar intersections if epoxy coated reinforcement is required for the railing proposed to be slipformed. Provide a wire line to maintain vertical and horizontal alignment of the slipform machine. Attach a grade line gauge or pointer to the machine so a continuous comparison can be made between the rail being placed and the established grade line. Rails or supports at the required grade are allowed instead of sensor controls. Make one or more passes with the slipform over the rail segment to ensure proper operation and maintenance of grades and clearances before placing concrete. Provide slipformed rail within a vertical and horizontal alignment tolerance of $\pm 1/4$ in. per 10 feet. Construct rail with a smooth and uniform appearance. Consolidate concrete so it is free of honeycomb. Provide concrete with a consistency that will maintain the shape of the rail without support. Minimize starting and stopping of the slipform operation by ensuring a continuous supply of concrete.

Do not exceed the manufacturer's recommended speed for the slipform machine. Stop slipforming and take remedial action if slipforming causes movement of the reinforcement such that plan clearances are not achieved. Remove and replace unsatisfactory slipformed rail at the Contractor's expense.

3.3. **Tests.** The Engineer will sample cast aluminum posts for testing in accordance with [Tex-731-I](#) to verify the material requirements of Item 442, "Metal for Structures." Metal beam rail elements may be sampled in accordance with [Tex-713-I](#). The Engineer may sample bolts and nuts in accordance with [Tex-708-I](#) for galvanized coating testing.

The Engineer will select 3 anchor bars or bolts from the first day's production to be tested after the epoxy has cured. Test the bars or bolts in the presence of the Engineer in accordance with ASTM E1512, using a restrained test, to evaluate the epoxy adhesive's bond strength. Verify the anchor bars or bolts develop the required pullout resistance on the plans or 75% of the yield strength of the bars or bolts, whichever is less, without a bond failure of the epoxy. The Engineer may require additional tests during production. Perform corrective measures to provide adequate capacity if any of the tests do not meet the required test load. Repair damage from testing.

4. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured by the foot.

This is a plans quantity measurement Item. The quantity to be paid for is the quantity shown in the proposal except as modified by Article 9.2., "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

5. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Railing" of the type specified. This price will be full compensation for furnishing, preparing, and placing concrete, expansion joint material, reinforcing steel, structural steel, aluminum, cast steel, pipe, anchor bolts or bars, testing of epoxy anchors, and all other materials required in the finished railing; removal and disposal of salvageable materials; and hardware, paint and painting of metal railing, galvanizing, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Item 540

Metal Beam Guard Fence



1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish, install, replace, or adjust metal beam guard fence consisting of metal beam rail elements, hardware, blocks, and support posts.

2. MATERIALS

Provide samples of metal beam rail elements, terminal sections, bolts, and nuts for compliance testing according to [Tex-708-I](#) and [Tex-713-I](#) to verify physical and chemical properties meet AASHTO M 180 when directed.

Obtain materials at the locations shown on the plans when the plans designate that the Department will furnish materials.

- 2.1. **Metal Beam Rail Elements.** Furnish new metal beam rail elements, transitions, anchor sections, and terminals that meet the requirements of Table 1 and are from a manufacturer on the Department's MPL of rail element manufacturers.

Type I or II is required, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Base metal for metal beam rail elements must not contain more than 0.04% phosphorous or more than 0.05% sulfur.

Warped or deformed rail elements will be rejected.

Table 1
Rail Element Requirements

Specification	AASHTO M 180
Class	A— Base metal nominal thickness 0.105 in. B— Base metal nominal thickness 0.135 in.
Type	I— Zinc-coated 1.80 oz. per square foot minimum single-spot. II— Zinc-coated 3.60 oz. per square foot minimum single-spot. IV— Weathering Steel (required when shown on the plans).
Shape	W-Beam Thrie Beam W-Beam to Thrie Beam Transition
Markings	Permanently mark each metal beam rail element with the information required in AASHTO M 180. In addition, permanently mark all curved sections of metal beam rail element with the radius of the curved section in the format "R=XX ft." Markings must be on the back of the metal beam rail section away from traffic and visible after erection.

- 2.2. **Posts.** Furnish new round timber, rectangular timber, or rolled steel section posts in accordance with details shown on the plans and the following requirements:

- 2.2.1. **Timber Posts.** Meet the requirements of [DMS-7200](#), "Timber Posts and Blocks for Metal Beam Guard Fence." Purchase from a manufacturer or supplier on the Department's MPL of timber treating plants and suppliers.

- 2.2.2. **Steel Posts.** Provide rolled sections conforming to the material requirements of ASTM A36. Drill or punch posts for standard rail attachment as shown on the plans. Galvanize according to Item 445, "Galvanizing." Low-fill culvert posts may be fabricated as galvanized "blanks" with the rail hole and the final height field fabricated. Treat all exposed post surfaces caused by the field fabrication in accordance with Section 445.3.5., "Repairs."

- 2.3. **Blocks.** Furnish new rectangular timber or composite blocks in accordance with details shown on the plans and the following requirements:
- 2.3.1. **Timber.** Meet the requirements of [DMS-7200](#), "Timber Posts and Blocks for Metal Beam Guard Fence." Purchase from a manufacturer or supplier on the Department's MPL of timber treating plants and suppliers.
- 2.3.2. **Composite.** Meet the requirements of [DMS-7210](#), "Composite Material Posts and Blocks for Metal Beam Guard Fence." Purchase from a manufacturer on the Department's MPL of composite material blocks and posts.
- 2.4. **Fittings.** Furnish new fittings (bolts, nuts, and washers) according to the details shown on the plans and galvanized according to Item 445, "Galvanizing."
- 2.5. **Terminal Connectors.** Furnish new terminal connectors, where required, meeting the material and galvanizing requirements specified for metal beam rail elements.
- 2.6. **Concrete.** Furnish concrete for terminal anchor posts meeting the requirements for Class A concrete as required in Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete."
- 2.7. **Curb.** If indicated in the details, furnish the curb shown with metal beam guard fence transition as required by Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."
- 2.8. **Terminal Anchor Posts.** Furnish new terminal anchor posts from steel conforming to the material requirements of ASTM A36. Fabricate posts according to Item 441, "Steel Structures." Galvanize terminal anchor posts after fabrication according to Item 445, "Galvanizing."
- 2.9. **Driveway Terminal Anchor Posts.** Furnish new terminal anchor posts from steel conforming to the material requirements of ASTM A36. Fabricate posts according to Item 441, "Steel Structures." Galvanize terminal anchor posts after fabrication according to Item 445, "Galvanizing."
- 2.10. **Downstream Anchor Posts.** Furnish new terminal anchor posts consisting of new rectangular timber and new steel foundation tubes according to details shown on the plans.
- 2.11. **Downstream Anchor Hardware.** Furnish new hardware (brackets, plates, struts, cable, etc.) according to the details shown on the plans and galvanized according to Item 445, "Galvanizing."
- 2.12. **Controlled Released Terminal (CRT) Posts.** Furnish new CRT posts according to the details shown on the plans and conforming to the requirements of [DMS-7200](#), "Timber Posts and Blocks for Metal Beam Guard Fence." Purchase from a manufacturer or supplier on the Department's MPL of timber treating plants and suppliers.

3. CONSTRUCTION

Install posts and rail elements according to details shown on the plans.

- 3.1. **Posts.** Install posts by either drilling or driving.
- 3.1.1. **Drilling.** Drill holes and set posts plumb and firm to the line and grade shown. Backfill posts by thoroughly compacting material to the density of adjacent undisturbed material.
- 3.1.2. **Driving.** Drive posts plumb with approved power hammers (steam, compressed air, vibratory, or diesel) or gravity hammers to the line and grade shown while preventing damage to the post. Use pilot holes when required and approved. Determine the size and depth of pilot holes based on results of the first few posts driven. Thoroughly tamp loosened soil around the post, fill voids with suitable material, and thoroughly compact to the density of adjacent undisturbed material.

- 3.2. **Rail Elements.** Erect metal beam rail elements to produce a smooth, continuous rail paralleling the line and grade of the roadway surface or as shown on the plans. Bolt rail elements end-to-end and lap splices in the direction of traffic. Field-drill or punch holes in rail elements for special details, only when approved.
- 3.3. **Short Radius.** Special rail fabrication with a required radius must be as shown on the plans.
- 3.4. **Terminal Anchor Posts.** Embed terminal anchor posts in concrete, unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- 3.5. **Galvanizing Repair.** Repair all parts of galvanized steel posts, washers, bolts, and rail elements after erection where galvanizing has become scratched, chipped, or otherwise damaged. Repair in accordance with Section 445.3.5., "Repairs."
- 3.6. **Guardrail Adjustment.** Work includes vertical adjustment, horizontal shift, and overlap of the rail element to meet the detail shown on the plans.
- 3.7. **Curb.** If indicated in the details, construct the curb shown with metal beam guard fence transition as required by Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."
- 3.8. **Driveway Terminal Anchor Posts.** Embed terminal anchor posts in concrete, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

4. MEASUREMENT

- 4.1. **Guard Fence.** Measurement will be by the foot of fence. Fence will be measured on the face of the rail in place, from center-to-center of end splice locations.
- 4.2. **Terminal Anchor Sections.** Measurement will be by each section, complete in place, consisting of a terminal anchor post and one 25-ft. section of rail element.
- 4.3. **Transitions.** Transitions for rail connection will be measured by each transition.
- 4.4. **Short Radius.** Measurement will be by the foot to the nearest whole foot along the face of the rail in place, from beginning of radius (first CRT post) to the end of radius.
- 4.5. **Driveway Terminal Anchor Section.** Measurement will be by each section, complete in place, consisting of a driveway terminal anchor post and one 6-ft. section of rail element.
- 4.6. **Downstream Anchor Terminal.** Measurement will be by each section, complete in place, consisting of one W-Beam end section, 2 downstream anchor posts, and one rail section.
- 4.7. **Long Span System.** Measurement will be by the foot of fence. Fence will be measured on the face of the rail, in place, between the first CRT and last CRT posts in the system.

5. PAYMENT

The work performed and material furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid at the unit price bid for "Metal W-Beam Guard Fence" of the post type specified; "Metal Thrie Beam Guard Fence" of the post type specified; "Terminal Anchor Section"; "Metal Beam Guard Fence Transition" of the type specified; "Metal W-Beam Guard Fence Adjustment"; "Metal Thrie Beam Guard Fence Adjustment"; "Terminal Anchor Section Adjustment"; "Transition Adjustment"; "Short Radius"; "Driveway Terminal Anchor Section"; "Downstream Anchor Terminal"; or "Metal Beam Guard Fence (Long Span System)." When weathering steel is required, Type IV will be specified.

Samples furnished to the Department for testing purposes, special backfill materials, and concrete curbs will not be paid directly but are subsidiary to this Item.

- 5.1. **Guard Fence.** The price bid for “Metal W-Beam Guard Fence” or “Metal Thrie Beam Guard Fence” is full compensation for materials, hauling, erection, setting posts in concrete, blocks, driving posts, excavating, backfilling, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 5.2. **Terminal Anchor Section.** When a separate bid item is specified, the price bid for “Terminal Anchor Section” is full compensation for furnishing the rail element, anchor assembly, terminal anchor post, and foundations; installing the rail element anchor assembly and the terminal anchor post and foundations; excavation and backfilling; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 5.3. **Transition.** The price bid for “Metal Beam Guard Fence Transition” is full compensation for furnishing nested sections of Thrie Beam; nested sections of W-Beam; Thrie Beam to W-Beam transitional rail piece, posts, concrete, curb, and connections to W-Beam guard fence and bridge rails; Thrie Beam terminal connectors; excavation and backfilling; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 5.4. **Guardrail Adjustment.** The price bid for “Metal W-Beam Guard Fence Adjustment,” “Metal Thrie Beam Guard Fence Adjustment,” “Terminal Anchor Section Adjustment,” and “Transition Adjustment” is full compensation for furnishing materials not supplied by the Department, drilling holes in posts, hauling, erection, blocks, excavation, backfill, cleaning, salvaging materials, setting rail element anchor assembly and terminal anchor post, removal of rail element, concrete, curb, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 5.5. **Short Radius.** The price bid for “Short Radius” is full compensation for furnishing special rail fabricated metal beam guard fence, CRT posts, steel posts, sand barrels, end terminal, cable anchor, materials, hauling, erection, blocks, driving posts, excavating, backfilling, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 5.6. **Driveway Terminal Anchor Section.** The price bid for “Driveway Terminal Anchor Section” is full compensation for furnishing the rail element, driveway anchor assembly, driveway terminal anchor post, and foundations; installing the rail element anchor assembly and the driveway terminal anchor post and foundations; excavation and backfilling; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 5.7. **Downstream Anchor Terminal.** The price bid for “Downstream Anchor Terminal” is full compensation for furnishing the rail element, W-Beam end section, guardrail anchor bracket, shelf angle bracket, channel strut, downstream anchor posts, breakaway cable terminal (BCT) cable anchor assembly, and foundations; installing the BCT cable anchor assembly and the downstream anchor post and foundations; excavation and backfilling; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.
- 5.8. **Long Span System.** The price bid for “Metal Beam Guard Fence (Long Span System)” is full compensation for furnishing the rail element, CRT posts, materials, hauling, erection, blocks, driving posts, excavating, backfilling, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Item 552

Wire Fence



1. DESCRIPTION

Furnish and construct fence of barbed wire or a combination of woven fence fabric and barbed wire, supported on metal or wood posts.

2. MATERIALS

Furnish materials in accordance with details shown on the plans and with the requirements of this Article.

- 2.1. **Metal Posts and Braces.** Furnish steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A53 if used for posts and braces. Use steel that meets ASTM A702 for T-posts. Use only new steel. Do not use rerolled or open-seam material. Furnish galvanized steel sections in accordance with Item 445, "Galvanizing." Use an approved anticorrosive coating when painting is specified. Spot-coat damaged areas with the same paint color after installation of painted posts and braces. Use paint with at least the same anticorrosive properties as the original paint. Use the size, weight, and area of posts, braces, and anchor plates shown on the plans.
- 2.2. **Wood Posts and Braces.**
- 2.2.1. **Untreated Wood.** Provide cedar or juniper timber.
- 2.2.2. **Treated Wood.** Provide pine timber treated in accordance with Item 492, "Timber Preservative and Treatment." Remove outer bark and all inner cambium bark on treated posts; occasional strips of bark may remain if not over 1/2 in. wide or over 3 in. long.
- Use sound timber that is free from decay, shakes, splits, or other defects that would weaken the posts or braces or otherwise make them structurally unsuitable for the purposes intended. Knots that are sound, tight, trimmed flush, and not in clusters will be allowed, provided they do not exceed 1/3 of the small diameter or the least dimension of the posts and braces. Remove spurs and splinters, cutting the ends square.
- 2.3. **Gates and Gateposts.** Furnish materials to the dimensions shown on the plans or as directed.
- 2.4. **Barbed Wire.** Furnish barbed wire in accordance with ASTM A121, Class 1. Use barbed wire consisting of 2 strands of 12-1/2 gauge wire, twisted with 2-point 14 gauge barbs spaced no more than 5 in. apart, or other barbed wire as directed.
- 2.5. **Wire Mesh.** Furnish wire mesh fabric in accordance with ASTM A116, Class 1 to the height and design shown on the plans. Use at least 10 gauge wire for the top and bottom wires and at least 12-1/2 gauge wire for the intermediate wires and vertical stays.
- 2.6. **Miscellaneous.** Furnish galvanized bolts, nuts, washers, braces, straps, and suitable devices for holding barbed wire and wire mesh firmly to metal posts. Use material of good commercial quality and design. Provide galvanized staples at least 1-1/2 in. long.

3. CONSTRUCTION

Space fence posts as shown on the plans. Set fence posts plumb and firm at the intervals, depth, and grade shown on the plans. Brace corner and pull posts in 2 directions. Brace end posts and gateposts in one direction. Install a corner post where the alignment changes 30° or more. Brace the angle post to the adjacent line posts with diagonal tension wires at alignment angles between 15° and 30°.

Snub or guy fencing at the critical point of grade depressions where stresses tend to pull posts out of the ground with a double 9 gauge galvanized wire. Connect the wire to the top horizontal line of the barbed wire or to the top and bottom wire or wire mesh fabric, and to a deadman weighing at least 100 lb. Stretch the fence before guying and snubbing.

Install corner, end, or angle post assembly before stretching the wire between posts. Connect existing cross fences to the new fences and corner posts at junctions with existing fences. Fasten to posts using galvanized ties or staples while drawing barbed wire and wire fabric taut, or as shown on the plans. Install pull post assemblies at 500-ft. intervals for steel posts and at 1,000-ft. intervals for wood posts. Metal line posts may be driven provided driving does not damage the posts. Metal corners, ends, pull posts, and braces must be set in concrete footings crowned at the top to shed water. Thoroughly tamp backfill in 4-in. layers. Notch timber posts as shown on the plans.

4. MEASUREMENT

Fencing will be measured by the foot of wire fence, excluding gates. Gates will be measured as each gate.

5. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Wire Fence" or "Gate" of the type specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing, preparing, hauling, and installing fence and gate materials; excavation, backfilling, and disposal of surplus material; removal and trimming of brush and tree limbs; and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Removal of existing fence and gates will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to pertinent Items unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Item 585

Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces



1. DESCRIPTION

Measure and evaluate the ride quality of pavement surfaces.

2. EQUIPMENT

2.1. **Surface Test Type A.** Provide a 10-ft. straightedge or where allowed, a high-speed or lightweight inertial profiler, certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute.

2.2. **Surface Test Type B.** Provide a high-speed or lightweight inertial profiler, certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute. Provide equipment certification documentation. Display a current decal on the equipment indicating the certification expiration date.

Use a certified profiler operator from the Department's MPL. When requested, furnish documentation for the person certified to operate the profiler.

2.3. **Diamond Grinding Equipment.** Provide self-propelled powered grinding equipment specifically designed to smooth and texture pavements using circular diamond blades when grinding is required. Provide equipment with automatic grade control capable of grinding at least 3 ft. of width longitudinally in each pass without damaging the pavement.

3. WORK METHODS

Measure and evaluate profiles using Surface Test Types A and B on surfaces as described below unless otherwise shown on the plans.

3.1. **Transverse Profile.** Measure the transverse profile of the finished riding surface in accordance with Surface Test Type A.

3.2. **Longitudinal Profile.** Measure the longitudinal profile of the surface, including horizontal curves.

3.2.1. **Travel Lanes.** Use Surface Test Type B on the final riding surface of all travel lanes except as follows unless otherwise shown on the plans.

3.2.1.1. **Service Roads and Ramps.** Use Surface Test Type A on service roads and ramps unless Surface Test Type B is shown on the plans.

3.2.1.2. **Short Projects.** Use Surface Test Type A when project pavement length is less than 2,500 ft. unless otherwise shown on the plans.

3.2.1.3. **Bridge Structures.** Measure the profile in accordance with the pertinent item or use Surface Test Type A for span type bridge structures, approach slabs, and the 100 ft. leading into and away from such structures.

3.2.1.4. **Leave-Out Sections.** Use Surface Test Type A for leave-out sections and areas between leave-out sections that are less than 100 ft.

3.2.1.5. **Ends.** Use Surface Test Type A on the first and last 100 ft. of the project pavement length.

- 3.2.2. **Shoulders and Other Areas.** Use Surface Test Type A for shoulders and all other areas including intermediate pavement layers.
- 3.3. **Profile Measurements.** Measure the finished surface in accordance with Surface Test Type A or B in accordance with Section 585.3.1., "Transverse Profile," Section 585.3.2., "Longitudinal Profile," and the plans.
- 3.3.1. **Surface Test Type A.** Test the surface with a 10-ft. straightedge as directed. Use an inertial profiler to measure the surface when allowed. The Engineer will use Department software to evaluate the surface.
- 3.3.2. **Surface Test Type B.**
- 3.3.2.1. **QC Testing.** Perform QC tests on a daily basis throughout the duration of the project. Use a 10-ft. straightedge, inertial profiler, profilograph, or any other means to perform QC tests.
- 3.3.2.2. **QA Testing.** Perform QA tests using either a high-speed or lightweight inertial profiler. Coordinate with and obtain authorization from the Engineer before starting QA testing. Perform QA tests on the finished surface of the completed project or at the completion of a major stage of construction, as approved. Perform QA tests within 7 days after receiving authorization.
- The Engineer may require QA testing to be performed at times of off-peak traffic flow. Operate the inertial profiler in a manner that does not unduly disrupt traffic flow as directed. When using a lightweight inertial profiler to measure a surface that is open to traffic, use a moving traffic control plan in accordance with Part 6 of the TMUTCD and the plans.
- In accordance with Tex-1001-S, operate the inertial profiler and deliver test results within 24 hr. of testing. Provide all profile measurements in electronic data files using the format specified in Tex-1001-S.
- 3.3.2.2.1. **Verification Testing.** The Engineer may perform ride quality verification testing within 10 working days after the Contractor's QA testing is complete for the project or major stage of construction. When the Department's profiler produces an overall average international roughness index (IRI) value over 3.0 in. per mile higher than the value calculated using Contractor data, the Engineer will decide whether to accept the Contractor's data, use the Department's data, use an average of both parties' data, or request a referee test. Referee testing is mandatory if the difference is greater than 6.0 in. per mile.
- 3.3.2.2.2. **Referee Testing.** The Construction Division will conduct referee testing, and the results are final. The Construction Division may require recertification for the Contractor's or Department's inertial profiler.
- 3.4. **Acceptance Plan and Pay Adjustments.** The Engineer will evaluate profiles for determining acceptance, bonus, penalty, and corrective action.
- 3.4.1. **Surface Test Type A.** Use diamond grinding or other approved work methods to correct surface areas that have more than 1/8-in. variation between any 2 contacts on a 10-ft. straightedge. For asphalt concrete pavements, fog seal the aggregate exposed from diamond grinding. Following corrective action, retest the area to verify compliance with this Item.
- 3.4.2. **Surface Test Type B.** The Engineer will use the QA test results to determine pay adjustments for ride quality using Department software. IRI values will be calculated using the average of both wheel paths. When taking corrective actions to improve a deficient 0.1-mi. section, pay adjustments will be based on the data obtained from reprofiling the corrected area.
- 3.4.2.1. **IRI Pay Adjustment for 0.1-mi. Sections.** Unless pay adjustment Schedule 1 or 2 is shown on the plans, Schedule 3 from Table 1 and Table 2 will be used to determine the level of pay adjustment for each 0.1-mi. section on the project.

No bonus will be paid for any 0.1-mi. section that contains localized roughness.

PART B

CONTECH BRIDGECOR SPECIFICATIONS

I - GENERAL

1.0 STANDARDS AND DEFINITIONS

1.1 STANDARDS - All standards refer to latest edition unless otherwise noted.

1.1.1 ASTM A-761 "Corrugated Steel Structural Plate, Zinc Coated for Field-Bolted Pipe, Pipe-Arches and Arches" (AASHTO Designation M-167).

1.1.2 AASHTO LRFD Specification for Highway Bridges - Section 12.

1.1.3 AASHTO LRFD Specification for Highway Bridges - Section 26.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Owner - In these specifications the word "Owner" shall mean **MIDLAND COUNTY**

1.2.2 Engineer - In these specifications the word "Engineer" shall mean the Engineer of Record or Owner's designated engineering representative.

1.2.3 Manufacturer - In these specifications the word "Manufacturer" shall mean CONTECH Engineered Solutions, LLC 800-338-1122 **BRIAN LOPAS, BRIDGE CONSULTANT, 214-316-3954, BLOPAS@CONTECHESCOM.**

1.2.4 Contractor - In these specifications the word "Contractor" shall mean the firm or corporation undertaking the execution of any installation work under the terms of these specifications.

1.2.5 Approved - In these specifications the word "approved" shall refer to the approval of the Engineer or his designated representative.

1.2.6 As Directed - In these specifications the words "as directed" shall refer to the directions to the Contractor from the Owner or his designated representative.

2.0 GENERAL CONDITIONS

2.1 The Contractor shall furnish all labor, material and equipment and perform all work and services except those set out and furnished by the Owner, necessary to complete in a satisfactory manner the site preparation, excavation, filling, compaction, grading as shown on the plans and as described therein. This work shall consist of all mobilization clearing and

grading, grubbing, stripping, removal of existing material unless otherwise stated, preparation of the land to be filled, filling of the land, spreading and compaction of the fill, and all subsidiary work necessary to complete the grading of the cut and fill areas to conform with the lines, grades, slopes, and specifications. This work is to be accomplished under the observation of the Owner or his designated representative.

- 2.2 Prior to bidding the work, the Contractor shall examine, investigate and inspect the construction site as to the nature and location of the work, and the general and local conditions at the construction site, including without limitation, the character of surface or subsurface conditions and obstacles to be encountered on and around the construction site and shall make such additional investigation as he may deem necessary for the planning and proper execution of the work.

If conditions other than those indicated are discovered by the Contractor, the Owner shall be notified immediately. The material which the Contractor believes to be a changed condition shall not be disturbed so that the owner can investigate the condition.

- 2.3 The construction shall be performed under the direction of the Engineer.
- 2.4 All aspects of the structure design and site layout including foundations, backfill, end treatments and necessary scour consideration shall be performed by the Engineer.

Any installation guidance provided herein shall be endorsed by the Engineer or superseded by the Engineer's plans and specifications.

II - CONTECH BRIDGECOR BOX

1.0 GENERAL

- 1.1 Manufacturer shall fabricate the **BOX CULVERT** as shown on the plans. Fabrication shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A-761 and shall consist of plates, fasteners, and appurtenant items.

Plate thickness, end treatment and type of invert and foundation shall be as indicated on the plans. All manufacturing processes including corrugating, punching, curving and required galvanizing shall be performed within the United States of America.

- 1.2 The contractor shall verify all field dimensions and conditions prior to ordering materials.

2.0 DIMENSIONS

- 2.1 The proposed structure shall be a CONTECH BRIDGECOR 31S with the following dimensions:

Span: 31'-4" Rise: 10'-0" Gage: 7

- 2.2 All plan dimensions on the contract drawings are measured in a true horizontal plan unless otherwise noted.

3.0 ASSEMBLY AND INSTALLATION

- 3.1 Bolts and nuts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A-449. The CONTECH BRIDGECOR BOX shall be assembled in accordance with the plate layout drawings provided by the manufacturer and per the manufacturer's recommendations.

Bolts shall be tightened using an applied torque of between 100 and 300 ft.-lbs.

- 3.2 The CONTECH BRIDGECOR BOX shall be installed in accordance with the plans and specifications, the manufacturer's recommendations, and AASHTO Standard Specification for Highway Bridges - Section 26.

- 3.3 Trench excavation shall be made in embankment material that is structurally adequate. The trench width shall be shown on the plans. Poor quality in situ embankment material must be removed and replaced with suitable backfill as directed by the Engineer.

- 3.4 Bedding preparation is critical to both structure performance and service life. The bed should be constructed to uniform line and grade to avoid distortions that may create undesirable stresses in the structure and/or rapid deterioration of the roadway. The bed should be free of rock formations, protruding stones, frozen lumps, roots, and other foreign matter that may cause unequal settlement.

- 3.5 Adequate soil bearing capacity or strength shall be provided to the Engineer. Foundation details shall be provided by the Engineer.

- 3.6 The structure shall be assembled in accordance with the Manufacturer's instructions. All plates shall be unloading and handled with reasonable care. Plates shall not be rolled or dragged over gravel rock and shall be prevented from striking rock or other hard objects during placement in trench or on bedding.

When assembled on a cast in place spread footing, the structure shall be assembled in the footing starting at the upstream end. When assembled

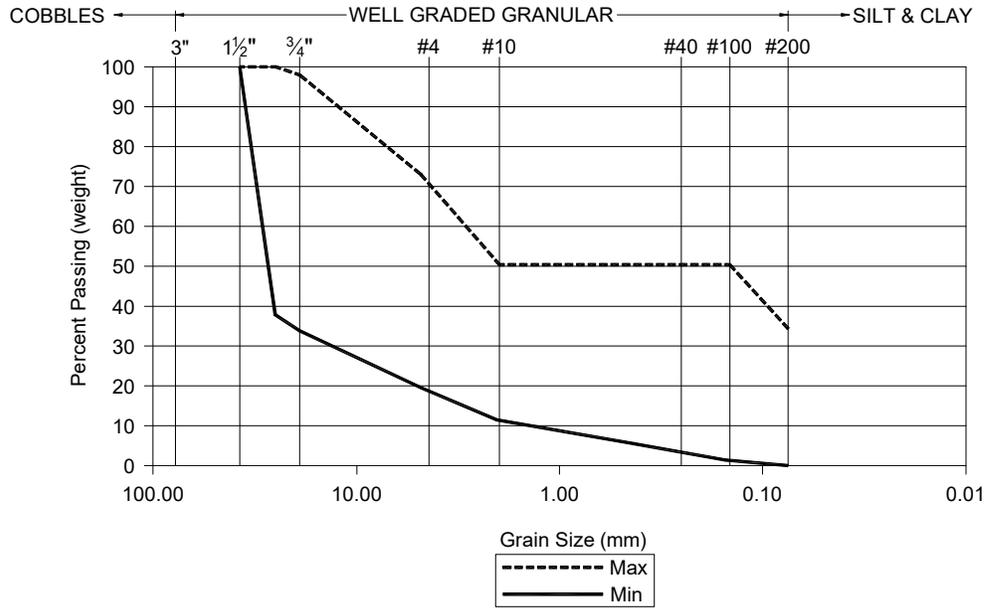
on a full invert, the invert shall be placed starting at the downstream end. The structure shell shall be assembled on the invert starting at the inlet end. Circumferential seams shall be installed with the plate laps shingled downstream as viewed from the inside of the structure.

The structure shall be backfilled using clean well graded granular material that meets the requirements of AASHTO M-145 for soil classifications **A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5 or A-3 based on CANDE analysis** according to the table.

Backfill must be placed symmetrically on each side of the structure in 6 to 8 inch loose lifts. Each lift shall be compacted to a minimum of 90 percent density per AASHTO T-180.

- 3.7 Construction loads that exceed highway load limits are not allowed to cross the structure without approval from the Engineer.

Normal highway traffic is not allowed to cross the structure until the structure has been backfilled and paved. If the road is unpaved, cover allowance to accommodate rutting shall be as directed by the Engineer.



GROUP CLASSIFICATION	A-1-a	A-1-b	A-2-4	A-2-5	A-3
Sieve Analysis Percent Passing					
No. 10 (2.000 mm)	50 max.	----	----	----	----
No. 40 (0.425 mm)	30 max.	50 max.	----	----	51 max.
No. 100 (0.150 mm)	----	----	50 max.	50 max.	----
No. 200 (0.075 mm)	15 max.	25 max.	20 max.	20 max.	10 max.
Atterberg Limits for Fraction Passing No. 40 (0.425 mm)					
Liquid Limits	----	----	40 max.	41 max.	----
Plasticity Index	6 max.	6 max.	10 max.	10 max.	Non-Plastic
Usual Materials	Stone Fragment, Gravel and Sand		Silty or Clayey Gravel and Sand		Coarse Sand

NOTE: Atterberg Limits are modified to provide material that are primarily granular

PART C

GUIDE SCHEDULE OF SAMPLING AND TESTING

GUIDE SCHEDULE OF SAMPLING & TESTING FOR DESIGN BID-BUILD (DBB) PROJECTS - (DBB Guide Schedule)

JUNE 28, 2019



Using the Guide Schedule

Research of sampling and testing rates, listed for project tests in the following Guide Schedule, show that the Department's and the Contractor's risk of either rejecting "good" material or accepting "bad" material range from 20% to 40%.

To reduce this risk, we recommend that the sampling rate be increased during initial production. A four-fold increase in testing frequency will generally reduce risk to approximately 5%. The intent of increasing testing, at the start of production, is to insure the Contractor's processes are in control and to establish acceptability requirements early.

There is a need to increase the frequency of testing for high-variability materials and when testing results do not meet specifications. The Engineer may require the Contractor to reimburse the Department for costs resulting from failing test results, in accordance with the specifications.

Materials incorporated in TxDOT projects are subjected to various quality assurance procedures such as testing (as outlined in this document), certification, quality monitoring, approved lists, etc. The Engineer and testing staff should familiarize themselves with materials to be used before work begins by reviewing the specifications and this document. Discuss material testing requirements with the Contractor.

Other testing required by the specifications, but not shown in the DBB Guide Schedule, should be performed at a frequency necessary to provide adequate confidence that materials meet specifications.

NOTE—The TxDOT District Area Engineer or Director of Construction must submit a "Materials Certification Letter" at final acceptance of the project. The intent of this letter is to ensure that the quality of all materials incorporated into the project is in conformance with the plans and specifications, thus ensuring a service life equivalent to the design life. Any material represented by an acceptance test, that does not meet the criteria contained in the plans and specifications, is considered an exception. Exceptions must be listed in the materials certification letter. For projects with federal oversight, submit the materials certification letter (See Appendix D of DBB QAP) to the FHWA division administrator, with a copy to **the Materials and Tests Division (MTD)**. For non-federal oversight projects, submit the material certification letter (Appendix E of DBB QAP) to the TxDOT District Engineer, with a copy to **MTD**. Refer to section 4.1 of the "Quality Assurance Program for Design-Bid-Build Projects" (DBB QAP).

Assuring the quality of the product and proper incorporation of materials into the project begins with proper sampling practices. Sampling, testing, and construction inspection must be performed collaboratively to assure the specific attributes of the finished product reflect quality workmanship. Sampling guidance for hot-mix asphalt is contained in Tex-225-F, "Random Selection of Bituminous Mixture Samples," and the respective specification for that material. All remaining materials are covered by method and materials specifications, to which the following applies.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

For acceptance testing, especially that which directly determines payment for the Contractor, sampling personnel should provide randomness in sampling by avoiding patterned sampling routines. Examples of such sampling practices are as follows:

- Soils/flexible base: Vary sampling between stockpiling operations, completed stockpile, windrow, and project site. Vary the time of day sampling is performed.
- Aggregates: Sample aggregates nearest the point of incorporation into the work. Vary sampling between stockpiling operations, completed stockpile, belt sampling, and if deemed necessary, railroad cars/trucks. Vary the time of day sampling is performed.
- Concrete (structural and miscellaneous): Always sample as near as practicable to the point of placement. For strength testing, vary the time of day or the number of truck from which the concrete is sampled. Tests for slump, air, and temperature should be done often to ensure the consistent control of the concrete production (not applicable to miscellaneous concrete).

This Guide Schedule is applicable to all contracts associated with the 2014 Standard Specifications.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE I – EMBANKMENTS, SUBGRADES, BACKFILL, AND BASE COURSES

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (F)	REMARKS
EMBANKMENT (CUTS & FILLS)	Liquid Limit (A)	Tex-104-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or project site (B)	Materials with PI ≤ 15: 10,000 CY	For Type A embankment or when required by the plans. This test may be waived for embankment cuts as directed by the Engineer . Determine a new liquid limit and plasticity index for each different material or notable change in material. Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E. When shown on plans. This test may be waived for embankment cuts, as directed by the Engineer. Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E. Not required for ordinary compaction. Determine a new optimum moisture and maximum density for each different material or notable change in material. Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E. Not required for ordinary compaction. Determine a new optimum moisture and maximum density according to Tex-114-E for each different material or notable change in material. Correct the moisture contents measured by nuclear density gauge in Tex-115-E with the moisture contents determined in accordance with Tex-103-E, as necessary for control, for each different material or notable change in material and adjust the density accordingly. Materials such as RAP, gypsum, lime, cement, and iron ore tend to bias the counts for nuclear density gauges.
	Plasticity Index (A)	Tex-106-E		Materials with PI > 15: 5,000 CY	
	Gradation	Tex-110-E		Each 10,000 CY	
	Moisture/Density	Tex-114-E		As directed by the Engineer	
	In-place Density (A)	Tex-115-E	As directed by the Engineer	Fill: each 5,000 CY min. 1 per lift.	
Cut: each 6,000 LF					
RETAINING WALL (NON-SELECT BACKFILL)	As shown above for Embankment (Cuts and Fills)		As shown above for Embankment (Cuts and Fills)	As shown above for Embankment (Cuts and Fills)	Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E.
RETAINING WALL (SELECT BACKFILL)	Plasticity Index (A)	Tex-106-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or project site (B)	Each 5,000 CY	Required only for Type CS backfill . Test the fraction of material finer than the No. 200 sieve. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-E.
	Gradation	Tex-110-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or project site (B)	Each 5,000 CY	Required only for Drainage Aggregate. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Tex-401-A			Required only for Select Backfill. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
Resistivity (A)	Tex-129-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or project site (B)	Each 5,000 CY	For material with resistivity between 1,500 and 3,000 ohm-cm, determine chloride and sulfate content, as specified in Item 423. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.	

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE I – EMBANKMENTS, SUBGRADES, BACKFILL, AND BASE COURSES

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (F)	REMARKS
RETAINING WALL (SELECT BACKFILL) (continued)	pH (A)	Tex-128-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or project site (B)	Each 5,000 CY	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
	Magnesium Soundness	Tex-411-A	During stockpiling operations, or from completed stockpile	1 per source, per project	Test when backfill sources appear to contain particles such as shale, caliche, or other soft, poor-durability particles. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
	Micro-Deval	Tex-461-A	During stockpiling operations, or from completed stockpile	1 per source, per project	May be used as an alternate to the magnesium soundness only when the % loss from the micro-deval is not greater than 20%. When the % loss from the micro-deval is greater than 20%, the magnesium soundness governs aggregate verification. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
	In-place Density (A)	Tex-115-E	As directed by the Engineer.	1 per backfill lift, per wall	Not required for rock backfill. For walls greater than 500 ft. in length, perform one test per lift for every 500 ft. in length. (F) Correct the moisture contents measured by nuclear density gauge in Tex-115-E with the moisture contents determined in accordance with Tex-103-E for each different material or notable change in material and adjust the density accordingly.
UNTREATED BASE COURSES	Liquid Limit (A)	Tex-104-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or windrow (B)	Each 5,000 CY	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
	Plasticity Index (A)	Tex-106-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or windrow (B)	Each 5,000 CY	
	Gradation (A)	Tex-110-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or windrow (B)	Each 5,000 CY	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
	Moisture/Density	Tex-113-E	From completed stockpile at the source (E)	Each 20,000 CY	Not required for ordinary compaction. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE I – EMBANKMENTS, SUBGRADES, BACKFILL, AND BASE COURSES

			PROJECT TESTS			
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (F)	REMARKS	
UNTREATED BASE COURSES (Continued)	Wet Ball Mill (A)	Tex-116-E	From completed stockpile at the source (E)	Each 20,000 CY	Required for Grades 1–2 and 5, and as shown on the plans for Grade 4. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.	
	Strength (A)	Tex-117-E	From completed stockpile at the source (E)	Each 20,000 CY	Required for Grades 1–2 and 5, and as shown on the plans for Grade 4. When base material is from a source where the District has a record of satisfactory triaxial results, the frequency of testing may be reduced to one per 30,000 CY. If any one test falls below the minimum value required, the frequency of testing will return to the original frequency of 20,000 CY. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.	
	In-place Density (A)	Tex-115-E	As directed by the Engineer	Each 3,000 CY, min. 1 per lift	Correct the moisture contents measured by nuclear density gauge in Tex-115-E with the moisture contents determined in accordance with Tex-103-E, as necessary for control, for each different material or notable change in material and adjust the density accordingly. Materials such as RAP, gypsum, lime, cement, and iron ore tend to bias the counts for nuclear density gauges.	
	Thickness (A)	Tex-140-E	As directed by the Engineer	Each 3,000 CY	Not required where survey grade control documents are compliant.	
	Ride Quality (A)	Tex-1001-S Surface Test, Type B	Final riding surface of travel lanes		This applies to the final travel lanes that receive a 1- or 2-course surface treatment for the final surface, unless otherwise shown on the plans.	
TREATED SUBGRADE AND BASE COURSES	SUBGRADE BEFORE TREATMENT	Organic Content	Tex-148-E	As directed by the Engineer	1 per project, per source or as directed by the Engineer	Required for existing subgrade material and material imported from a borrow source. Soil survey and geologic maps may be used to determine sampling locations. Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E.
	SUBGRADE BEFORE TREATMENT	Sulfate Content	Tex-145-E	As directed by the Engineer	1 per 500 feet or 5,000 CY	Required for existing subgrade material and material imported from a borrow source. Soil survey and geologic maps may be used to determine sampling locations. Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E.
	NEW BASE MATERIAL	Liquid Limit (A)	Tex-104-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or windrow (B)	Each 5,000 CY	When central mix site or plant is used, windrow sampling may be waived. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE I – EMBANKMENTS, SUBGRADES, BACKFILL, AND BASE COURSES

			PROJECT TESTS			
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (F)	REMARKS	
TREATED SUBGRADE AND BASE COURSES (Continued)	NEW BASE MATERIAL (Continued)	Plasticity Index (A)	Tex-106-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or windrow (B)	Each 5,000 CY	
		Gradation (A)	Tex-110-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or windrow (B)	Each 5,000 CY	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Wet Ball Mill (A)	Tex-116-E	From completed stockpile at the source (E)	Each 20,000 CY	Required for Grades 1–2 and 5, and as shown on the plans for Grade 4. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Strength (A)	Tex-117-E	From completed stockpile at the source (E)	Each 20,000 CY	Required for Grades 1–2 and 5, and as shown on the plans for Grade 4. When base material is from a source where the District has a record of satisfactory triaxial results, the frequency of testing may be reduced to one per 30,000 CY. If any one test falls below the minimum value required, the frequency of testing will return to the original frequency of 20,000 CY.
	LIME	Compliance with DMS-6350	Tex-600-J	During delivery to project	Commercial Lime Slurry: each 200 tons of lime Carbide Lime Slurry: each 100 tons of lime	Sample in accordance with Tex-600-J. Verify the source is listed on the current Material Producer List for Lime. Only materials appearing on the Material Producer List will be accepted. Sample frequency for Carbide Lime Slurry may be increased as directed by the Engineer. For Hydrated Lime and Quick Lime, project testing is not required but it is encouraged to sample and test the material at a rate of 1 per project as a best practice.
	CEMENT	Compliance with DMS-4600		Railroad car, truck, or cement bins		Verify the source is listed on the current Material Producer List for Cement. If not, sample and test in accordance with DMS-4600. (C)
	FLY ASH MATERIAL	Compliance with DMS-4615		Project samples at location directed by the Engineer		Verify the source is listed on the current Material Producer List for Fly Ash. Only materials from MTD approved sources appearing on the Material Producer List for Fly Ash will be accepted. Project testing is not required but it is encouraged to sample and test the material at a rate of 1 per project as a best practice. (C)

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE I – EMBANKMENTS, SUBGRADES, BACKFILL, AND BASE COURSES

MATERIAL OR PRODUCT		TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	PROJECT TESTS		REMARKS
				LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (F)	
TREATED SUBGRADE AND BASE COURSES (Continued)	COMPLETE MIXTURE	Pulverization Gradation	Tex-101-E, Part III	Roadway, after pulverization and mixing	As necessary for control	At the beginning of the project, one test must be made for each 4,500 CY or 6,000 tons until the Engineer is satisfied that acceptable pulverization results are being obtained. Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E.
		Moisture/Density Curve and Strength	Tex-120-E, Part II, or Tex-121-E, Part II	From roadway windrow after treatment (E)	Each 20,000 CY	Not required for ordinary compaction. Determine a new moisture/density curve for each different or notable change in material. Perform Tex-120-E, Part II, for Cement Treated Material, and Tex-121-E, Part II, for Lime, Lime-Fly Ash, or Fly Ash Treated Material. If Tex-120-E, Part I, Tex-121-E, Part I, or Tex-127-E is performed before the project, this test may be waived. Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E.
		Moisture/Density Curve and Strength	Tex-120-E, Part I, Tex-121-E, Part I, or Tex-127-E	From roadway before treatment	As necessary for control	Perform Tex-120-E, Part I, on cement treated material, and Tex-121-E, Part I, for lime-fly ash or fly ash treated material. Verifies the field strength by comparing results from the mix design. Performed at the direction of the Engineer and when notable change in material, as described above for Part II of the test procedures. Sample in accordance with Tex-100-E.
		In-place Density (A)	Tex-115-E	As directed by the Engineer	Each 3,000 CY, min 1 per lift	Determine the appropriate moisture/density curve for each different material or notable change in material. Correct the moisture contents measured by nuclear density gauge in Tex-115-E with the moisture contents determined in accordance with Tex-103-E, as necessary for control, for each different material or notable change in material and adjust the density accordingly. Stabilizers and materials such as RAP, gypsum, and iron ore tend to bias the counts for nuclear density gauges.
		Thickness (A)	Tex-140-E	As directed by the Engineer	Each 3,000 CY	Not required where survey grade control documents are used for compliance.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE I – EMBANKMENTS, SUBGRADES, BACKFILL, AND BASE COURSES					
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	PROJECT TESTS		REMARKS
			LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (F)	
RECLAIMED ASPHALT PAVEMENT (RAP), CRUSHED CONCRETE, and RECYCLED MATERIALS	Sulfate Content	Tex-145-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or windrow	Each 5,000 CY	Required only for contractor furnished recycled material, including crushed concrete. Not required for RAP. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
	Deleterious Material	Tex-413-A		Each 5,000 CY	Required only for contractor furnished recycled material, including crushed concrete. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
	Decantation	Tex-406-A	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or windrow	Each 5,000 CY	Required only for contractor furnished RAP. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.

TABLE I – FOOTNOTES	
A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager (SM), in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	Engineer will select any of these locations or any combinations thereof with the provision that the initial sample will be obtained from the completed stockpile at the source and at least one out of ten consecutive samples will be taken at the project site (from the windrow for treated and untreated bases and embankments when possible).
C	Attach the corresponding QM test report for SiteManager projects to satisfy project sampling and testing requirements.
D	For acceptance testing, especially that which directly determines payment for the Contractor, sampling personnel should provide randomness in sampling by avoiding patterned sampling routines. Examples of such sampling practices are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Soils/Flexible Base: For gradation, liquid limit, and plastic limit, vary sampling between stockpiling operations, completed stockpile, windrow, and project site. Vary the time of day sampling is performed. • Aggregates: Sample aggregates nearest the point of incorporation into the work. Vary sampling between stockpiling operations, completed stockpile, belt sampling, and if deemed necessary, railroad cars/trucks. Vary the time of day sampling is performed.
E	The Engineer will sample from the completed stockpile at the source and test before placement.
F	Each test performed that is based on a quantity of material is considered “or fraction thereof” for calculating number of tests.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE IA – ASPHALT TREATED BASE (Plant Mix)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (C)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (D)	REMARKS
AGGREGATE	Liquid Limit (A)	Tex-104-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or before mixing	Each 5,000 CY	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
	Plasticity Index (A)	Tex-106-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or before mixing	Each 5,000 CY	
	Wet Ball Mill (A)	Tex-116-E	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or before mixing	1 per project, per source	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A. (B)
LIME	Compliance with DMS-6350		During delivery to the project	Hydrated Lime: 1 per project Commercial Lime Slurry: each 200 tons of lime (D) Carbide Lime Slurry: each 100 tons of lime (D) Quick Lime: 1 per project	On projects requiring less than 50 tons, material from MTD approved sources may be accepted on the basis of Producer's Certification without sampling.
RECLAIMED ASPHALT PAVEMENT (RAP), and RECYCLED AGGREGATE	Decantation	Tex-406-A, Part I	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or before mixing	Each 10,000 CY	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
RECYCLED ASPHALT SHINGLES (RAS)	Decantation	Tex-217-F, Part III	During stockpiling operations, from completed stockpile, or before mixing	Each 10,000 CY	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
ASPHALT BINDER	Compliance with Item 300		Sampling port nearest the storage tank	1 per project, per grade, per source	Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample binder in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part II. Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SiteManager (SM) Assistant. The Engineer must associate one QM sample per project in SM.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE IA – ASPHALT TREATED BASE (Plant Mix)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (C)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (D)	REMARKS
TACK COAT	Compliance with Item 300		Distributor	1 per project, per grade, per source	<p>Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample tack coat in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part III.</p> <p>Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant.</p> <p>The Engineer must associate one QM sample per project in SM.</p>
COMPLETE MIXTURE	Gradation (A)	Tex-200-F, Part I	Plant Mix (C)	20,000 CY (25,000 tons)	<p>Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.</p> <p>Determine the gradation of the aggregate from the complete mixture tested in accordance with Tex-236-F.</p>
	Laboratory Density (A)	Tex-126-E	Plant Mix (C)	20,000 CY (25,000 tons)	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Percent Asphalt (A)	Tex-236-F	Plant Mix (C)	Each 1,500 CY (2,000 tons) or days production	Determine an asphalt content correction factor for ignition oven at a minimum of one per project. Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Indirect Tensile Strength – Dry	Tex-226-F	Plant Mix	1 per project, per design	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Moisture Susceptibility	Tex-530-C	As directed by the Engineer	1 per project, per design	This test may be waived, when shown on the plans. Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
ROADWAY	In-Place Air Voids (A)	Tex-207-F	Roadway cores, as directed by the Engineer (C, D)	Each 3,000 CY, min 1 per lift	Not required for ordinary compaction or when air void requirements are waived. Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Ride Quality	Tex-1001-S Surface Test, Type A	On Finished Surface		Unless otherwise shown on the plans.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE IA – FOOTNOTES	
A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager (SM), in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	Engineer will select any of these locations or any combinations thereof with the provision that at least one out of ten consecutive samples will be taken at the project site (from the windrow for treated and untreated bases and embankments when possible).
C	For acceptance testing, especially that which directly determines payment for the Contractor, sampling personnel should provide randomness in sampling by avoiding patterned sampling routines. Examples of such sampling practices are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Soils/Flexible Base: Vary sampling between stockpiling operations, completed stockpile, windrow, and project site. Vary the time of day sampling is performed.• Aggregates: Sample aggregates nearest the point of incorporation into the work. Vary sampling between stockpiling operations, completed stockpile, belt sampling, and if deemed necessary, railroad cars/trucks. Vary the time of day sampling is performed.
D	Each test performed, that is based on a quantity of material, is considered “or fraction thereof” for calculating number of tests.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE II – SEAL COAT					
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	PROJECT TESTS		REMARKS
			LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (C)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (D)	
AGGREGATE	Gradation (A)	Tex-200-F, Part I	Stockpile (At source or at point of delivery)	Each 1,000 CY	Rate may be reduced to each 2,000 CY if the Engineer approves a contractor quality control plan. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	L. A. Abrasion (A)	Tex-410-A	Stockpile	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer List for BRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample and test at 1 per 20,000 CY before use. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F. (B)
	Magnesium Soundness (A)	Tex-411-A	Stockpile	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer List for BRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample and test at 1 per 20,000 CY before use. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F. (B)
	Surface Aggregate Classification (A)	Tex-612-J, Tex-411-A	Stockpile	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer List for BRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample and test at 1 per 20,000 CY before use. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F. (B)
	Pressure Slake (A)	Tex-431-A	Stockpile	1 per 20,000 CY	Same as above. Required only for lightweight aggregate. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	Freeze Thaw (A)	Tex-432-A	Stockpile	1 per 20,000 CY	Same as above. Required only for lightweight aggregate. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	Unit Weight	Tex-404-A	Stockpile	1 per 20,000 CY	Same as above. Required only for lightweight aggregate. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	24 hr. Water Absorption (A)	Tex-433-A	Stockpile	1 per 20,000 CY	Same as above. Required only for lightweight aggregate. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	Crushed Face Count	Tex-460-A, Part I	Stockpile	1 per 20,000 CY	Only required for crushed gravel. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	Deleterious Material (A)	Tex-217-F, Part I	Stockpile	1 per 10,000 CY	Not required for lightweight aggregate. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	Decantation (A)	Tex-406-A	Stockpile	1 per 10,000 CY	Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
Flakiness Index	Tex-224-F	Stockpile	Frequency as directed by the Engineer	Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.	

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE II – SEAL COAT					
			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (C)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (D)	REMARKS
AGGREGATE (Continued)	Micro Deval	Tex-461-A	Stockpile	1 per project or as necessary for control	Compare result to published value listed on the current Material Producer List for BRSQC . Submit sample to MTD for Soundness and L.A. Abrasion testing when results differ by more than 3% points, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer . Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	White Rock Count	Tex-220-F	Stockpile		Required only for Limestone Rock Asphalt. Not required when MTD provides inspection at the plant. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	Naturally Impregnated Bitumen Content	Tex-236-F	Stockpile		Required only for Limestone Rock Asphalt. Not required when MTD provides inspection at the plant. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
PRECOATED AGGREGATE	Asphalt Content	Tex-210-F	Stockpile	Frequency as directed by the Engineer when a target value is specified	Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
ASPHALT BINDER	Compliance with Item 300		Distributor	1 per project, per grade, per source	Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample asphalt binder in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part III. Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant. The Engineer must associate one QM sample per project in SM.

TABLE II – FOOTNOTES	
A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager, in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	Attach the corresponding QM test report for SiteManager projects to satisfy project sampling and testing requirements.
C	For acceptance testing, especially that which directly determines payment for the Contractor, sampling personnel should provide randomness in sampling by avoiding patterned sampling routines. Examples of such sampling practices are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aggregates: Sample aggregates nearest the point of incorporation into the work. Vary sampling between stockpiling operations, completed stockpile, belt sampling, and if deemed necessary, railroad cars/trucks. Vary the time of day sampling is performed.
D	Each test performed, that is based on a quantity of material, is considered “or fraction thereof” for calculating number of tests.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE III – HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE – STRUCTURAL (Classes: C, F, H, S, CO, K, LMC, or SS)						
			PROJECT TESTS			
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (E)	REMARKS	
MINERAL AGGREGATE	COARSE AGGREGATE	Decantation (B)	Tex-406-A	From stockpile at concrete plant	Each 20,000 CY of concrete (each source)	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Sieve Analysis (A) (B)	Tex-401-A		Each 1,000 CY of concrete (each source)	Test combined aggregate when used. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Deleterious Materials (B)	Tex-413-A		1 per project or as necessary for control	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Los Angeles Abrasion (A) (B)	Tex-410-A		One, each source	Verify the value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer list for CRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A. (C)
		Magnesium Soundness (A) (B)	Tex-411-A		One, each source	Verify the value of the source, as listed on the current CRSQC , meets the project specifications. (C)
	FINE AGGREGATE	Sand Equivalent (B)	Tex-203-F	From stockpile at concrete plant	1 per project or as necessary for control	Test combined aggregate when used. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Organic Impurities (B)	Tex-408-A		1 per project, per source	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Sieve Analysis (A) (B)	Tex-401-A		Each 1,000 CY of concrete (each source)	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Fineness Modulus (B)	Tex-402-A		1 per project or as necessary for control	Test combined aggregate when used. Test to confirm material variability when strength values are in question. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Deleterious Material (B)	Tex-413-A		1 per project or as necessary for control	Test to confirm material variability when strength values are in question. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.

This is a guide for **minimum sampling and testing**.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE III – HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE – STRUCTURAL (Classes: C, F, H, S, CO, K, LMC, or SS)						
			PROJECT TESTS			
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT		TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (E)	REMARKS
MINERAL AGGREGATE (Continued)	FINE AGGREGATE (Continued)	Acid Insoluble Residue (A) (B)	Tex-612-J		Two, each source	Only for concrete subject to direct traffic. Verify the value of the source, as listed on the current CRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A. (C)
SILICA FUME		Compliance with DMS-4630 (A)		Railroad car, truck, bags or silos	1 per project, per class of concrete (For each type and brand)	Provide MTD with one 4 x 8 concrete sample for silica fume dispersion verification. Verify the source is listed on the Material Producer List for Silica Fume. Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D.
METAKAOLIN		Compliance with DMS-4635 (A)		Railroad car, truck or silos	1 per project, per class of concrete (For each type and brand)	Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D.
MIX DESIGN		Compliance with Standard Specification Item 421.4.A		At source (if not approved)	Min. 1 design per class, per source	Verify if cement, fly ash, slag cement, and chemical admixture sources are listed on the Material Producer Lists. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing. Water testing is contracted by the concrete supplier (commercial lab report to be reviewed by TxDOT). Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D for cement and in accordance with Tex-733-I for fly ash.
JOINT MATERIAL		Compliance with DMS-6300				Verify the source is listed on the Material Producer List for Joint Sealers . If not, sample and test before use in accordance with DMS-6310. (C) Sample in accordance with Tex-500-C.
CURING COMPOUND		Compliance with DMS-4650		Sampled at jobsite; tested by MTD . See remarks.	When requested by MTD	Only products listed on the Material Producer List for Concrete Curing Compounds will be allowed. When sample is requested by MTD , sample in accordance with Tex-718-I. Ensure container has been agitated and mixed before sampling. (C)
EVAPORATION RETARDANTS		Compliance with DMS-4650				Only products listed on the Material Producer list for Evaporation Retardants will be allowed. (C)
REINFORCING STEEL		Compliance with the Std. Specifications & Spec. Provisions	As Specified			Only materials from MTD approved sources listed on the Material Producer Lists for Reinforcing Steel Mills and Seven Wire Steel Strand will be allowed. (C)

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE III – HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE – STRUCTURAL (Classes: C, F, H, S, CO, K, LMC, or SS)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (E)	REMARKS
MECHANICAL COUPLERS	Compliance with DMS-4510	Tex-743-I	Sampled at jobsite; Tested by MTD	3 couplers per lot (500 couplers) for each type, model, bar size, and grade	Only materials from MTD approved sources listed on the Material Producer List for Mechanical Couplers will be allowed. (C)
LATEX	Compliance with DMS-4640 for concrete chemical admixtures				Verify the Latex is listed on the Material Producer List for Chemical Admixtures.
EPOXY	Compliance with DMS-6100, unless otherwise specified		Sampled at jobsite if not pre-approved by MTD .	1 per batch or shipment	Verify the source is listed on the Material Producer List for Epoxies and Adhesives . If not, sample and test before use in accordance with DMS-6100. Sample in accordance with Tex-734-I. (C)
CONCRETE	Compressive Strength (A)	Tex-418-A	At point of concrete placement	4 cylinders for each 60 CY per class, per day (For bridge railing and traffic railing, testing may be reduced to 4 cylinders per 180 CY per class regardless of days)	Sampling must be in accordance with Tex-407-A. Making additional cylinders for 56 day testing should be considered when slow strength gain mixtures are being used, or when the approved mix design has a history of failing to meet design strength at 28 days. Test two cylinders at 7 days, and if the average value is below the design strength, as defined in Item 421, Table 8, test the remaining 2 cylinders at 28 days, or 56 days if additional cylinder were not made. If the average value of the 2 cylinders tested at 7 days meets the minimum design strength, listed in Item 421, Table 8, the remaining cylinders are not required to be tested. If the average value of the 7 and 28 day cylinders are below the design strengths, and 56 day cylinders were made, test the remaining set at 56 days.
	Slump	Tex-415-A		1 test, per 4 strength specimens	Sample in accordance with Tex-407-A. Perform slump and temperature tests on the same load from which strength test specimens are made. Perform entrained air test only when entrained air concrete is specified on the plans. Check temperature of every load for bridge slabs and mass concrete placements.
	Entrained Air (A)	Tex-416-A or Tex-414-A			Contractor's required testing will be in accordance with specification requirements for the appropriate specification Item #.
	Temperature of Concrete (A)	Tex-422-A			

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE III – HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE – STRUCTURAL (Classes: C, F, H, S, CO, K, LMC, or SS)					
			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (D)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (E)	REMARKS
CONCRETE (Continued)	Bridge Deck or Culvert Top Slab Thickness and Depth of Reinforcement	Tex-423-A, Part II	During dry run and during concrete placement (Bridge decks and direct traffic culverts)	1 per span	Min 6–Max 18 locations per span.

TABLE III – FOOTNOTES	
A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager, in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	These Project Tests may be used for one or more projects being furnished concrete from the same plant during the same period.
C	Attach the corresponding QM test report for SiteManager projects to satisfy project sampling and testing requirements.
D	For acceptance testing, especially that which directly determines payment for the Contractor, sampling personnel should provide randomness in sampling by avoiding patterned sampling routines. Examples of such sampling practices are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aggregates: Sample aggregates nearest the point of incorporation into the work. Vary sampling between stockpiling operations, completed stockpile, and if deemed necessary, railroad cars/trucks. Vary the time of day sampling is performed. • Concrete (structural): Always sample as near as practicable to the point of placement. For strength testing, vary the time of day or the number of truck from which the concrete is sampled. Test often for slump, air, and temperature to ensure the consistent control of the concrete production.
E	Each test performed, that is based on a quantity of material, is considered “or fraction thereof” for calculating number of tests.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE IV – HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE – NON-STRUCTURAL CONCRETE (Classes: A, B, or E)					
			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING (B)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (C)	REMARKS
CONCRETE	Compressive Strength (A)	Tex-418-A	At point of concrete placement	2 cylinders per 180 CY, per class	Sampling must be in accordance with Tex-407-A. Strength will be determined by 7-day specimens.
MIX DESIGN	Compliance with the Standard Specification		At source if not approved	Min. 1 design per class, per source	Verify if cement, fly ash, slag cement, and chemical admixture sources are listed on the Material Producer Lists. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing. Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D for cement and in accordance with Tex-733-I for fly ash. Water testing is contracted by the concrete supplier (commercial lab report to be reviewed by TxDOT).
SILICA FUME	Compliance with DMS-4630		Railroad car, truck, bags, or silos	1 test per project, per class (for each type and brand)	Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D. Provide MTD with one 4 x 8 concrete sample for silica fume dispersion verification. Verify the source is listed on the Material Producer List for Silica Fume.
METAKAOLIN	Compliance with DMS-4635		Railroad car, truck, or silos	1 test per project, per class (for each type and brand)	Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D.

TABLE IV – FOOTNOTES	
A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager, in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	For acceptance testing, especially that which directly determines payment for the Contractor, sampling personnel should provide randomness in sampling by avoiding patterned sampling routines. Examples of such sampling practices are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concrete (miscellaneous): Always sample as near as practicable to the point of placement. For strength testing, vary the time of day or the number of truck from which the concrete is sampled.
C	Each test performed, that is based on a quantity of material, is considered “or fraction thereof” for calculating number of tests.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE V – HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT (Classes: P or HES)

			PROJECT TESTS			
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (D)	REMARKS	
MINERAL AGGREGATE	COARSE AGGREGATE	Decantation	Tex-406-A	From stockpile at concrete plant	Each 20,000 CY of concrete (each source)	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Sieve Analysis (A)	Tex-401-A		As necessary for control	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A. Test combined aggregate when used.
		Deleterious Materials	Tex-413-A		Each 20,000 CY of concrete (each source)	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		L.A. Abrasion (A)	Tex-410-A		One, each source	Verify the value of the source, as listed on the current CRSQC, meets the project specifications. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A. (C)
		Magnesium Soundness (A)	Tex-411-A			
	FINE AGGREGATE	Sand Equivalent	Tex-203-F	From stockpile at concrete plant	Each 3,000 CY of concrete (Each source or combination of sources)	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A. Test combined aggregate when used. At least one per week's production.
		Organic Impurities	Tex-408-A		1 per project, per source	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Sieve Analysis (A)	Tex-401-A		As necessary for control	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A. Test combined aggregate when used.
		Fineness Modulus (B)	Tex-402-A			
		Deleterious Material (B)	Tex-413-A		Each 20,000 CY of concrete (each source)	Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A.
		Acid Insoluble (A)	Tex-612-J		1 per project, per source	Verify the value of the source, as listed on the current CRSQC, meets the project specifications. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. Sample in accordance with Tex-400-A. (C)
MIX DESIGN	Compliance with the Standard Specifications Item 421.4.A		At source, if not approved	Min. 1 design, per class, per source	Verify if cement, fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag, and admixture sources are listed on the Material Producer List. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing. Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D for cement and in accordance with Tex-733-I for fly ash. Water testing is contracted by the concrete supplier (commercial lab report to be reviewed by TxDOT).	
SILICA FUME	Compliance with DMS-4630		Railroad car, truck, bags, or silos	1 per project, per class of concrete (For each type and brand)	Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D. Provide MTD with one 4 x 8 concrete sample for silica fume dispersion verification. Verify the source is listed on the Material Producer List for Silica Fume.	

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE V – HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT (Classes: P or HES)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (D)	REMARKS
METAKAOLIN	Compliance with DMS-4635		Railroad car, truck, or silos	1 per project, per class of concrete (For each type and brand)	Sample in accordance with Tex-300-D.
JOINT MATERIAL	Compliance with DMS-6310		Sampled at jobsite if not sampled at source by MTD ; tested by MTD . See remarks.	1 per batch or shipment	Sample in accordance with Tex-500-C. Sampling may be waived when the source is listed on the Material Producer List for Joint Sealers . (C)
CURING COMPOUND	Compliance with DMS-4650		Sampled at jobsite; tested by MTD . See remarks.	When requested by MTD	Only products listed on the Material Producer List for Concrete Curing Compounds will be allowed. When sample is requested by MTD , sample in accordance with Tex-718-I. Ensure container has been agitated and mixed before sampling. (C)
EVAPORATION RETARDANTS	Compliance with DMS-4650				Only products listed on the Material Producer List for Evaporation Retardants will be allowed. (C)
REINFORCING STEEL	Compliance with the Std. Specifications & Spec. Provisions	As Specified			Only materials from MTD approved sources listed on the Material Producer List for Reinforcing Steel Mills and Seven Wire Steel Strand will be accepted. (C)
MULTIPLE PIECE TIE BARS	Compliance with DMS-4515	Tex-712-I	Sampled at jobsite if not sampled at source by MTD ; tested by MTD . See remarks.	Refer to Tex-711-I for sampling rates	Only materials from MTD approved sources listed on the Material Producer List for Multiple Piece Tie-bars for Concrete Pavements will be allowed. Sample in accordance with Tex-711-I.
EPOXY	Compliance with DMS-6100		Sampled at jobsite if not pre-approved by MTD . See remarks.	1 batch per shipment	Verify the source is listed on the Material Producer List for Epoxyes and Adhesives . If not, sample and test before use in accordance with DMS-6100. Sample in accordance with Tex-734-I. (C)
CONCRETE	Strength (A) (B)	Tex-448-A or Tex-418-A	At point of concrete placement	2 cylinders for every 10 contractor job control tests	Sample in accordance with Tex-407-A. When the contract requires the project testing to be by the Engineer, the frequency and job control testing will be in accordance with the item of work. Split sample verification testing used when contractor performs job control testing. When job control testing by the contractor is waived by the plans, the frequency of sampling will be one test (2 specimens) for each 3,000 SY of concrete or fraction thereof or per day and split sample verification testing will be waived. Contractor's required testing will be in accordance with specification requirements for the appropriate specification Item #.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE V – HYDRAULIC CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT (Classes: P or HES)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OR TIME OF SAMPLING	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (D)	REMARKS
CONCRETE (Continued)	Slump	Tex-415-A	At time and location strength specimens are made	1 test for every 10 contractor job control tests.	Sample in accordance with Tex-407-A. Slump is not required for slip-formed pavement. Perform slump and temperature tests on the same load from which the strength specimens are made. Perform entrained air test only when entrained air concrete is specified on the plans. Contractor's required testing will be in accordance with specification requirements for the appropriate specification Item #.
	Entrained Air (A)	Tex-416-A or Tex-414-A			
	Temperature	Tex-422-A			
	Pavement Texture	Tex-436-A	Final Riding Surface of travel lanes	1 per day, per driving lane	Perform when carpet drag is the only surface texture required on the plans.
	Thickness	Tex-423-A, Part I	Center of paving machine	Every 500 feet	Methods other than Tex-423-A may be shown on the plans.
	Ride Quality (A)	Tex-1001-S Surface Test, Type B	Final riding surface of travel lanes		Engineer may verify contractor's results for surface test Type B. For traditional design-bid-build TxDOT projects, MTD has contracted with TTI to perform random ride verification at 10% frequency. Results from surface test Type A are not required to be reported.

TABLE V – FOOTNOTES

A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager, in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	When a project test does not meet the specified strength requirements and a reduced pay factor is assigned, document the analysis on the Letter of Certification of Materials Used.
C	Attach the corresponding QM test report for SiteManager projects to satisfy project sampling and testing requirements.
D	Each test performed, that is based on a quantity of material, is considered "or fraction thereof" for calculating number of tests.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VI – HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVEMENT (Items 341, 342, 344, 346, 347 and 348)
 (All testing as noted in Table VI may be waived for exempt production as defined by specification.)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION (Per Design)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (E)	REMARKS
COARSE AGGREGATE	L. A. Abrasion (A)	Tex-410-A	Stockpile (B)	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer list for BRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample in accordance with Tex-221-F and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. (C)
	Magnesium Soundness (A)	Tex-411-A			
	Surface Aggregate Classification (A)	Tex-499-A		1 per project, per source	
	Micro Deval	Tex-461-A		1 per project, per aggregate source	
COMBINED AGGREGATE	Sand Equivalent	Tex-203-F	Stockpiles, hot bins, or feeder belts	1 per project, per source, per design	Does not apply to Item 342. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F. The timing of when the test is performed is at the discretion of the Engineer.
ASPHALT BINDER	Compliance with Item 300 (A)		Sampling port nearest the storage tank	1 per project, per grade, per source	Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample binder at hot- mix plant in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part II. Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant. The Engineer must associate one QM sample, per project in SM.
TACK COAT	Compliance with Item 300 (A)		Distributor	1 per project, per grade, per source	Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample tack coat in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part III. Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant. The Engineer must associate one QM sample, per project in SM.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VI – HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVEMENT (Items 341, 342, 344, 346, 347 and 348)
(All testing as noted in Table VI may be waived for exempt production as defined by specification.)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION (Per Design)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (E)	REMARKS
MIX DESIGN	Compliance with applicable specification	Tex-204-F	At source (if not approved)	Min 1 design, per Mix Type and Asphalt Grade	Verify that aggregates, recycled asphalt pavement, recycled asphalt shingles, mineral filler, asphalt binder, anti-stripping additives, and warm mix systems are on the Material Producer List where applicable and that they meet project specification requirements. Project sampling and testing may be conducted on individual materials, as necessary, for control.
COMPLETE MIXTURE	Asphalt Content (A)	Tex-236-F	Engineer Truck Sample (D)	Minimum 1 per Lot	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Determine correlation factors for ignition oven using Tex-236-F at a minimum of one per project. When Tex-236-F does not yield reliable results, use alternative methods for determining asphalt content, such as, Tex-210-F (ASTM D2172/AASHTO T164) and Tex-228-F (ASTM D4125/AASHTO T287).
	Voids in Mineral Aggregates (VMA)	Tex-204-F	Truck Sample Plant Produced (D)	1 per Sublot	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Contractor's required testing will be in accordance with specification requirements for the appropriate specification Item #. Does not apply to Items 342 and 348.
	Gradation (A)	Tex-200-F	Engineer Truck Sample (D)	Minimum 1, per 12 Sublots (E)	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Determine correction factors for ignition oven using Tex-236-F at a minimum of one per project.
	Moisture Susceptibility	Tex-530-C	Truck Sample	1 per project	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F, unless waived by the Engineer.
	Indirect Tensile Strength – Dry	Tex-226-F			Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F, unless waived by the Engineer. Does not apply to Items 342, 346, 347, and 348.
	Moisture Content	Tex-212-F, Part II	Engineer Truck Sample		Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Lab Molded Density (A)	Tex-207-F, Part I, VI, VIII	Truck Sample (D)	1 per Sublot 1 per Lot for Item 347	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Contractor's required testing will be in accordance with specification requirements for the appropriate specification Item #.
	Drain Down Test (A)	Tex-235-F	Engineer Truck Sample	1 per 12 Sublots	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Not required for Items 341, 344, and 347.
	Hamburg Wheel Test (A)	Tex-242-F	Engineer Truck Sample	1 per project	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Sample during production. Does not apply to Item 348 PFC-C, PFCR-C, and Thin Bonded Wearing Course –All Types.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VI – HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVEMENT (Items 341, 342, 344, 346, 347 and 348)
(All testing as noted in Table VI may be waived for exempt production as defined by specification.)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION (Per Design)	FREQUENCY OF SAMPLING (E)	REMARKS
COMPLETE MIXTURE (Continued)	Cantabro Loss (A)	Tex-245-F	Engineer Truck Sample	1 per project	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Sample during production. Does not apply to items 341, 344, 346, and 347.
	Overlay Test (A)	Tex-248-F	Engineer Truck Sample	1 per project	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Does not apply to Items 341, 344, and 348 PFC-C, PFCR-C, and Thin Bonded Wearing Course –All Types.
ROADWAY	In-Place Air Voids (A)	Tex-207-F, Part I, VI, VIII	Roadway (D)	2 cores per Sublot	Two cores taken per Sublot and averaged. Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Does not apply to Items 342, 347, and 348.
	Segregation Profile (A)	Tex-207-F, Part V	Roadway	1 per project	Not required when Contractor uses thermal imaging system. Does not apply to Items 342, 347, and 348.
	Joint Density (A)	Tex-207-F, Part VII	Roadway	1 per project	
	Thermal Profile	Tex-244-F	Immediately behind paver	1 per project	Not required when Contractor uses thermal imaging system.
	Ride Quality Test Type B (A)	Tex-1001-S	Final riding surface of travel lanes	1 per project	Engineer may verify Contractor's results for surface test Type B. For traditional design-bid-build TxDOT projects, MTD has contracted with TTI to perform random ride verification at 10% frequency. Results for surface test Type A are not required to be reported.
	Permeability	Tex-246-F	Roadway	1 per project	Permeability is encouraged to use with items 342 and 348. Only applies to Item 347.
FABRIC UNDERSEAL	Compliance with DMS-6220		Sampled, tested, and approved by MTD		Sampling must be in accordance with Tex-735-I. Verify the source is listed on the current Material Producer List for Silt Fence, Filter Fabric, and Fabric Underseals. If not, sample and test before use in accordance with DMS-6220.

TABLE VI – FOOTNOTES

A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager, in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	Sampling may be performed at the plant, quarry, or both. Aggregate properties may be re-tested at any time during the project. These project tests may be used for one or more projects furnishing hot mix with the same aggregate source.
C	Attach the corresponding QM test report for SiteManager projects to satisfy project sampling and testing requirements.
D	Perform random sampling as specified in Tex-225-F, "Random Selection of Bituminous Mixture Samples."
E	Each test performed, that is based on a quantity of material, is considered "or fraction thereof" for calculating number of tests.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VII – HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVEMENT (Items 334) (Refer to DMS-9210, “Limestone Rock Asphalt (LRA),” for testing requirements for Item 330.)					
			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION	FREQUENCY (Per Design) (F)	REMARKS
COARSE AGGREGATE	L. A. Abrasion (A)	Tex-410-A	Stockpile (B)	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer List for BRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample in accordance with Tex-221-F and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. (D) Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F. Testing frequency may be reduced or eliminated based on a satisfactory test history.
	Magnesium Soundness (A)	Tex-411-A			
	Micro Deval	Tex-461-A			
	Surface Aggregate Classification (A)	Tex-499-A	Stockpile (B)	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer List for BRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample in accordance with Tex-221-F and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. SiteManager Quality Monitoring test documentation is accomplished by attaching an approved mix design.
COMBINED AGGREGATE	Sand Equivalent	Tex-203-F	Stockpiles, hot bins, or feeder belts	1 per project, per source	Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F. The timing of when the test is performed is at the discretion of the Engineer.
ASPHALT BINDER	Compliance with Item 300 (A)		Sampling port nearest the storage tank	1 per project, per grade, per source	Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample binder in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part II. Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant. The Engineer must associate one QM sample, per project in SM.
TACK COAT	Compliance with Item 300 (A) (C)		Distributor	1 per project, per grade, per source	Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample tack coat in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part III. Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant. The Engineer must associate one QM sample, per project in SM.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VII – HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVEMENT (Items 334)

(Refer to DMS-9210, “Limestone Rock Asphalt (LRA),” for testing requirements for Item 330.)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION	FREQUENCY (Per Design) (F)	REMARKS
MIX DESIGN	Compliance with applicable specification	Tex-204-F	At source (if not approved)	Min 1 design per Mix Type and Asphalt Grade	Verify that aggregates, recycled asphalt pavement, recycled asphalt shingles, mineral filler, asphalt binder, anti-stripping additives, and warm mix systems are on the Material Producer List where applicable and that they meet project specification requirements. Project sampling and testing may be conducted in individual materials as necessary for control.
COMPLETE MIXTURE	Asphalt Content (A)	Tex-236-F	Engineer Truck Sample (E)	Minimum of 1 per 5,000 tons	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Determine correlation factors for ignition oven using Tex-236-F at a minimum of one per project.
	Voids in Mineral Aggregates (VMA)	Tex-204-F	Truck Sample Plant Produced (E)	1 per 5,000 tons	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Gradation (A)	Tex-236-F	Truck Sample	Minimum 1 per 5,000 tons	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Determine correlation factors for ignition oven using Tex-236-F at a minimum of one per project.
	Boil Test	Tex-530-C		1 per project	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. The timing of when the test is performed is at the discretion of the Engineer.
	Moisture Content	Tex-212-F, Part II	Truck Sample	1 per 5,000 tons	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Performed by MTD at the point of production for payment calculations.
	Hydrocarbon- Volatile Content	Tex-213-F		1 per 5,000 tons	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. The timing of when the test is performed is at the discretion of the Engineer.
	Lab Molded Density (A)	Tex-207-F		1 per 5,000 tons	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Hveem Stability (A)	Tex-208-F		1 per 5,000 tons	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. The timing of when the test is performed is at the discretion of the Engineer.
ROADWAY	Ride Quality Test Type B (A)	Tex-1001-S	Final riding surface of travel lanes		Engineer may verify Contractor’s results for surface test Type B. For traditional design-bid-build TxDOT projects, MTD has contracted with TTI to perform random ride verification at 10% frequency. Results from surface test Type A are not required to be reported.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VII – FOOTNOTES

A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager, in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	Sampling may be performed at the plant, quarry, or both. Aggregate properties may be re-tested at any time during the project.
C	Or as called for in the Specifications.
D	Attach the corresponding QM test report for SiteManager projects to satisfy project sampling and testing requirements.
E	Perform random sampling as specified in Tex-225-F, “Random Selection of Bituminous Mixture Samples.”
F	Each test performed, that is based on a quantity of material, is considered “or fraction thereof” for calculating number of tests.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VIII – HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVEMENT (Item 340)

			PROJECT TESTS			
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION	FREQUENCY	REMARKS	
COARSE AGGREGATE	L. A. Abrasion (A)	Tex-410-A	Stockpile (B)	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer List for BRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample in accordance with Tex-221-F and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. (C)	
	Magnesium Soundness (A)	Tex-411-A				
	Micro Deval	Tex-461-A	Stockpile (B)	1 per project, per source		Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F. Testing frequency may be reduced or eliminated based on a satisfactory test history.
	Surface Aggregate Classification (A)	Tex-499-A	Stockpile (B)	1 per project, per source		Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer list for BRSQC , meets the project specifications. If not, sample in accordance with Tex-221-F and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. (C)
COMBINED AGGREGATE	Sand Equivalent	Tex-203-F	Stockpiles, hot bins, or feeder belts	1 per project, per design	Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.	
ASPHALT BINDER	Compliance with Item 300 (A)		Sampling port nearest the storage tank	1 per project, per grade, per source	<p>Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample binder in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part II.</p> <p>Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant.</p> <p>The Engineer must associate one QM sample, per project in SM.</p>	
TACK COAT	Compliance with Item 300 (A)		Distributor	1 per project, per grade, per source	<p>Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample tack coat in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part III.</p> <p>Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant.</p> <p>The Engineer must associate one QM sample, per project in SM.</p>	
MIX DESIGN	Compliance with applicable specification	Tex-204-F	At source (if not approved)	Min. 1 design per Mix Type and Asphalt Grade	Verify that aggregates, recycled asphalt pavement, recycled asphalt shingles, mineral filler, asphalt binder, anti-stripping additives, and warm mix systems are on the Material Producer List where applicable and that they meet project specification requirements. Project sampling and testing may be conducted in individual materials as necessary for control.	

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VIII – HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVEMENT (Item 340)

			PROJECT TESTS		
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION	FREQUENCY	REMARKS
COMPLETE MIXTURE	Asphalt Content	Tex-236-F	Truck Sample (D)	Minimum of 1 per day	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Determine correlation factors for ignition oven using Tex-236-F at a minimum of one per project.
	Voids in Mineral Aggregates (VMA)	Tex-204-F	Truck Sample Plant Produced (D)	1 per day	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Gradation (A)	Tex-236-F	Truck Sample	Minimum 1 per day	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Determine correlation factors for ignition oven using Tex-236-F at a minimum of one per project.
	Boil Test	Tex-530-C		1 per project	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F, unless waived by the Engineer.
	Indirect Tensile Strength – Dry	Tex-226-F		1 per project, per design	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F, unless waived by the Engineer.
	Lab Molded Density (A)	Tex-207-F	Truck Sample	1 per day	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Hamburg Wheel Tracker (A)	Tex-242-F		1 per project	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Sample during production.
ROADWAY	Air Voids (A)	Tex-207-F	Selected by the Engineer (D)	1 per day (2 Cores)	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F.
	Ride Quality Test Type B (A)	Tex-1001-S	Final riding surface of travel lanes		Engineer may verify Contractor's results for surface test Type B. For traditional design-bid-build TxDOT projects, MTD has contracted with TTI to perform random ride verification at 10% frequency. Results from surface test Type A are not required to be reported.
FABRIC UNDERSEAL	Compliance with DMS-6220		Sampled, tested, and approved by MTD		Sample in accordance with Tex-735-I. Verify the source is listed on the current Material Producer List for Silt Fence, Filter Fabric, and Fabric Underseals. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with DMS-6220.

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE VIII – FOOTNOTES

A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager, in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	Sampling may be performed at the plant, quarry, or both. Aggregate properties may be re-tested at any time during the project. These project tests may be used for one or more projects furnishing hot mix with the same aggregate source.
C	Attach the corresponding QM test report for SiteManager projects to satisfy project sampling and testing requirements.
D	Perform random sampling as specified in Tex-225-F, “Random Selection of Bituminous Mixture Samples.”

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE IX – MICROSURFACING (Item 350)

PROJECT TESTS					
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OF SAMPLING	FREQUENCY (Per Design)	REMARKS
AGGREGATE	Magnesium Soundness (A)	Tex-411-A	Stockpile (B)	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer list for BRSQC meets the project specifications. If not, sample in accordance with Tex-221-F and submit to MTD for testing at 1 per project, per source. (C)
	Gradation	Tex-200-F, Part II		1 per project, per source	Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	Crushed Face Count	Tex-460-A		1 per project, per source	Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
	Acid Insoluble (A)	Tex-612-J		1 per project, per source	Verify the value of the source, as listed on the current BRSQC, meets the project specifications. If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with Tex-499-A. Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F. (C)
	Surface Aggregate Classification	Tex-499-A	Stockpile, or BRSQC (B)	1 per project, per source	Verify the published value of the source, as listed on the current Material Producer list for BRSQC meets the project specifications. If not, sample in accordance with Tex-221-F and submit to MTD for testing at 1 per project, per source. (C)
COMBINED BLEND	Sand Equivalent	Tex-203-F	Stockpile (B)	1 per project, per source	Sample in accordance with Tex-221-F.
ASPHALT BINDER	Compliance with Item 300 (A)		Sampling port nearest the storage tank	1 per project, per grade, per source	<p>Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample binder in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part II.</p> <p>Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant.</p> <p>The Engineer must associate one QM sample, per project in SM.</p>
TACK COAT	Compliance with Item 300 (A)		Distributor	1 per project, per grade, per source	<p>Test a minimum of one sample taken from the project. Sample tack coat in accordance with Tex-500-C, Part III.</p> <p>Verify that the binder is from a preapproved source when it arrives on the project, and that the lab number on the shipping ticket is within the valid dates shown on the MTD QM test report or in the SM Assistant.</p> <p>The Engineer must associate one QM sample, per project in SM.</p>

This is a guide for minimum sampling and testing.
 Testing frequency may need to be increased for high material variability or when test results approach specification limits.

TABLE IX – MICROSURFACING (Item 350)

PROJECT TESTS					
MATERIAL OR PRODUCT	TEST FOR	TEST NUMBER	LOCATION OF SAMPLING	FREQUENCY (Per Design)	REMARKS
MIX DESIGN	Compliance with applicable specification	Tex-204-F	At source (if not approved)	Min. 1 design per project	Submit to MTD for approval.
CEMENT	Compliance with DMS-4600				Verify the source is listed on the current Material Producer List for Cement . If not, sample and submit to MTD for testing before use in accordance with DMS-4600.
COMPLETE MIX	Asphalt Content	Tex-236-F	During production	1 per day	Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Determine correlation factors for ignition oven using Tex-236-F at a minimum of one per project.
	Gradation	Tex-200-F, Part II Tex-236-F			Sample in accordance with Tex-222-F. Determine correlation factors for ignition oven use at a minimum of one per project.

TABLE IX – FOOTNOTES

A	When this project acceptance test fails, but the product is accepted, document the reasons for acceptance in SiteManager, in the remarks field, and on the end of the Project Materials Certification Letter.
B	Sampling may be performed at the plant, quarry, or both. Aggregate properties may be re-tested at any time during the project. These project tests may be used for one or more projects furnishing hot mix with the same aggregate source.
C	Attach the corresponding QM test report for SiteManager projects to satisfy project sampling and testing requirements.
D	Each test performed, that is based on a quantity of material, is considered “or fraction thereof” for calculating number of tests.

PART D

GEOTECHNICAL REPORT OF EXISTING CONDITIONS

Geotechnical Engineering Report

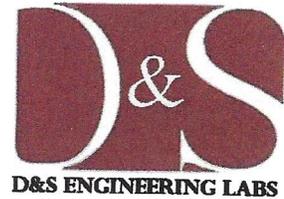
CR 1232 Phase 2

Midland, Texas

September 10, 2019



September 10, 2019



Jason Kelliher, P.E.
Discipline Lead
Dunaway Associates
4000 N. Big Spring, Suite 101
Midland, Texas 79705

**GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION
D&S ENGINEERING #G18-2150-C
MIDLAND COUNTY – CR 1232 PHASE 2
MIDLAND, TEXAS**

Mr. Kelliher,

As requested, D&S Engineering Labs, LLC (D&S) has completed the subsurface exploration and professional geotechnical engineering services for the referenced project. This investigation was conducted in accordance with Proposal No GP18-2150-C dated June 15, 2018. Authorization to proceed was received on June 20, 2018. Due to site access and site clearance issues the project got delayed and drilling was not completed until August 29, 2019.

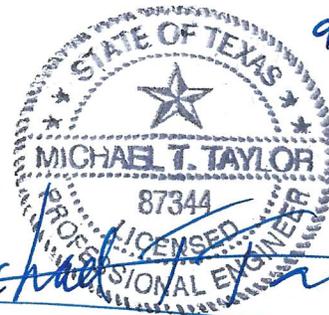
We appreciate the opportunity to provide professional geotechnical engineering services to you. We are available to discuss any questions which may arise regarding this report. Please do not hesitate to call when we can provide any additional services.

Sincerely,

D&S Engineering Labs, LLC

A handwritten signature in blue ink, appearing to read 'Ibrahim A. Baayeh', written over a circular stamp.

Ibrahim A. Baayeh, P.E.
Geotechnical Engineer



9-10-2019

Michael T. Taylor, P.E.
Senior Geotechnical Engineer

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	PROJECT DESCRIPTION.....	1
2.0	PURPOSE AND SCOPE	1
3.0	FIELD AND LABORATORY INVESTIGATION	2
3.1	General	2
3.2	Laboratory Testing	3
4.0	SITE CONDITIONS	4
4.1	Stratigraphy	4
4.2	Groundwater	5
5.0	ENGINEERING ANALYSIS	5
5.1	Estimated Potential Vertical Movement (PVM).....	5
6.0	PAVEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS.....	5
6.1	General	5
6.2	Behavior of Soils beneath Pavement	6
6.3	Pavement Subgrade Preparation Recommendations	6
6.3.1	Soil Preparation.....	7
6.3.2	Cement Treatment Recommendations	8
6.3.3	Aggregate Base	9
6.4	Subgrade Strength Characteristics.....	10
6.5	Pavement Design Assumptions	10
6.6	Flexible Pavement Design and Recommendations	11
6.7	Full Depth HMA.....	11
6.8	Additional Pavement Section Evaluations	12
6.9	HMA Installation and Testing	12
7.0	CULVERTS.....	12
8.0	RETAINING WALLS	14
8.1	Lateral Earth Pressures.....	14
9.0	OTHER CONSTRUCTION	16
9.1	Utility Lines and Culverts.....	16
9.2	Surface Drainage	17
9.3	Excavations and Excavation Difficulties	17
10.0	LIMITATIONS	18

APPENDIX A – BORING LOGS AND SUPPORTING DATA**APPENDIX B – GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF PROCEDURES**

**GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION
MIDLAND COUNTY – CR 1232 PHASE 2
MIDLAND, TEXAS**

1.0 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

This report presents the results of the geotechnical investigation for planned new County Road (CR 1232) construction in Midland, Texas. The new roadway segment, CR 1232, is approximately 8.5 miles in length and extends from the intersection of CR 1232 and CR 140 on the west end to its intersection with CR 1160 on the east end. The new road is a two-lane roadway and the new alignment will intersect an additional county road and state highway along this new segment. Culvert crossings were planned at 8 different locations along the new alignment originally. However, the recent change of alignment at the east side of the project beyond the station approximately 325+00 may have changed the number of culvert crossing locations. The soil borings were drilled along the new alignment.

Based on the aerial views and site visit, the new roadway segment site is generally bare soils and is recently cleared for the access. However, some portions of roadway alignment are not cleared and are covered with short to medium height brushes and some medium height trees. We expect that new roadway grades will be within 12 inches of existing ground grades. Photographs of the recent site condition are presented below.



2.0 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this investigation was to:

- Identify the subsurface stratigraphy and groundwater conditions present at the site.
- Evaluate the physical and engineering properties of the subsurface soil strata for use in the geotechnical analyses.

- Provide geotechnical recommendations for use in design of the proposed pavement improvements and related site works.

The scope of this investigation included:

- Drilling and sampling a total of forty-eight (48) borings along the alignments of proposed roadway and culvert crossings. Originally, fifty-two (52) borings were planned. However, the site was not cleared for borings located close to Midland Draw and thus three borings located within this area were not drilled. Also, one boring, Boring P34, for culvert crossing was not drilled due to muddy ground surface conditions.
- As requested, the borings for new roadway were advanced about every 1,000 feet interval along the new alignment, except for the portion between Station 100+00 and South County Road 1210, a distance of about 5,900 feet, where boring spacing were about every 500 feet. The borings for the roadway include Borings P1 through P13, P15, P18 through P22, P24 through P29, P31 through P33, P35 through P37, P39 through P45, P47, P50 and P51. These roadway borings were drilled to depths of about 1 to 10 feet.
- Seven (7) borings were drilled for 7 different culvert crossings locations. These borings include P16, P17, P23, P30, P38, P46 and P52. These borings were drilled to depths of about 5 to 15 feet.
- Laboratory testing of selected soil samples obtained during the field investigation.
- Preparation of a Geotechnical Report that includes:
 - Recommendations for the design of pavements.
 - Recommendations for earthwork and subgrade modifications.
 - Recommendation for retaining walls.

3.0 FIELD AND LABORATORY INVESTIGATION

3.1 General

Pavement core was obtained utilizing portable electric coring equipment at Boring P1. Below the pavement within Boring B1 and at the other boring locations, the borings were advanced using truck-mounted drilling equipment outfitted with solid continuous flight augers.

Soils were sampled in general accordance with the Standard Penetration Test (ASTM D1586). During this test, disturbed samples of subsurface material is recovered using a nominal 2-inch O.D. split-barrel sampler. The sampler is driven into the soil strata with an automatic hammer utilizing the energy equivalent of a 140-pound hammer falling freely from a height of 30 inches and striking an anvil located at the top of the

drill string. The number of blows required to advance the sampler in three consecutive 6-inch increments is recorded, and the number of blows required for the final 12 inches is noted as the "N"-value. The test is terminated at the first occurrence of either of the following: 1) when the sampler has advanced a total of 18 inches; 2) When the sampler has advanced less than one complete 6-inch increment after 50 blows of the hammer; 3) when the total number of blows reaches 100; or 4) if there is no advancement of the sampler in any 10-blow interval.

Subsurface materials were also intermittently tested in-situ using cone penetration tests in order to determine their resistance to penetration. For this test, a 3-inch diameter steel cone is driven by the energy equivalent of a 170-pound hammer falling freely from a height of 24 inches and striking an anvil located at the top of the drill string. Depending on the resistance of the soil and bedrock materials, either the number of blows of the hammer required to provide 12 inches of penetration is recorded (as two increments of 6 inches each), or the inches of penetration of the cone resulting from 100 blows of the hammer are recorded (as two increments of 50 blows each).

All samples obtained were extruded in the field, placed in plastic bags to minimize changes in the natural moisture condition, labeled to indicate the appropriate boring number and depth, then placed in protective, cardboard boxes for transportation to the laboratory. The approximate locations of borings advanced at the site are shown on the boring location map included in Appendix A. The specific depths, thicknesses, and descriptions of the strata encountered are presented on the individual Boring Log illustrations, which are also provided in Appendix A. Strata boundaries shown on the boring logs are approximate.

3.2 Laboratory Testing

Laboratory tests were performed to identify the relevant engineering characteristics of the subsurface materials encountered and to provide data for developing engineering design parameters. The subsurface materials recovered during the field exploration were initially logged by the drill crew and were later described by a Staff Engineer in the laboratory. These descriptions were later refined by a Geotechnical Engineer based on results of the laboratory tests performed. All recovered soil samples were classified and described in part using the Unified Soil Classification System (USCS) and other accepted procedures.

In order to determine soil characteristics and to aid in classifying the soils, index property and classification testing was performed on selected samples, as requested by the Geotechnical Engineer. These Index property and classification tests were performed in general accordance with the following ASTM or TxDOT testing standards:

- Moisture Content

ASTM D2216

- Atterberg Limits ASTM D4318
- Percent of Particles Finer Than the No. 200 Sieve ASTM D1140

The results of the ASTM tests are presented at the corresponding sample depths on the appropriate Boring Log illustrations. The index property and classification testing procedures are also described in more detail in Appendix B (General Description of Procedures).

4.0 SITE CONDITIONS

4.1 Stratigraphy

Based upon a review of the samples recovered, along with the Geologic Atlas of Texas, Hobbs Sheet, this site is in an area underlain by soil strata associated with Quaternary Windblown cover sand that generally consists of silty quartz sand and caliche in dunes and dune ridges.

At the surface within Boring B1, asphalt pavement of 3.5 inches in thickness are present. The asphalt section is underlain with base course (flexible base) material of 9 inches thick. The base course materials generally consist of coarse gravel to coarse sand that are various shades of brown and red in color.

At the surface within all borings, except Boring P37, either native sand or lean clay soils are present. The sand soils present are generally very loose to medium dense in condition, are various shades of brown in color and contain varying amounts of silts and clays. The lean clay soils present are generally medium stiff to stiff in consistency, are various shades of brown in color and contain varying amounts of sand. These native sand and lean clay soils extend to depths of about 1 to 11 feet within the borings and to maximum depth explored of about 5 feet within Borings P3, P5, P7, P8, P10 through P12, P17, P25, P28, P47 and P51.

At the surface within Boring B37 and below the native sand and clay soils within the remaining borings, materials locally referred to as "caliche" are present. The "caliche" materials are generally comprised of sand and clay soils. The caliche sands are generally very loose to very dense in condition, are various shades of brown in color and are fine to medium grained. Varying amounts of silts and clays are present within the sand strata. The caliche clays are generally stiff to very stiff in consistency and are various shades of brown in color. Varying amounts of sand are present within the clay strata. The caliche sand and clay soils extend to the maximum depths explored of about 5 to 15 feet. Boring B1 was terminated early due to the presence of a very hard layer that may be a caliche caprock.

Subsurface conditions at each boring location are described in detail on the individual boring log illustrations presented in Appendix A.

4.2 Groundwater

Groundwater seepage was not observed during drilling or upon completion of drilling within the borings performed at the site. Although not encountered, groundwater levels may be anticipated to fluctuate with seasonal and annual variations in rainfall and may also change as a result of local development.

5.0 ENGINEERING ANALYSIS

5.1 Estimated Potential Vertical Movement (PVM)

Potential Vertical Movement (PVM) was evaluated utilizing a variety of different methods for predicting movement, as described in Appendix B, and based on our experience and professional opinion.

At the time of our field investigation, the near-surface soils were generally found to be in a dry moisture condition. Based upon the results of our analysis, the site is estimated to possess a PVM of less than 1-inch at the soil moisture conditions existing at the time of the field investigation. Dry, average and wet are relative terms based on moisture content and plasticity.

The sandy soils present at the site are relatively non-expansive and are not subjected to appreciable vertical movements with changes in soil moisture content; however, they are subject to settlement with the application of load. The magnitude of settlement due to loading will depend on applied loading, soil conditions and on foundation type and geometry. Settlement of the existing soils under the anticipated typical traffic loading is estimated to be on the order of one-half inch assuming the soil is prepared in accordance with the recommendations outlined in this report.

6.0 PAVEMENT RECOMMENDATIONS

6.1 General

The pavement design recommendations provided here are derived from the subgrade information obtained during our geotechnical investigation, our experience with similar projects in this area, and from the guidelines and recommendations of the American Concrete Pavement Association (ACPA). WinPAS 12 software based on AASHTO 1993 from ACPA were used to develop the alternative suitable pavement sections, HMA.

The pavement section recommendations provided herein are based on the assumptions outlined. Should actual requirements or projections deviate from those assumptions, a re-analysis may be necessary. Increased intensity and frequency of traffic loading will require more stringent design parameters than those provided herein. Prevailing local codes or ordinances may also be more stringent and should take precedence over the recommendations contained herein. It is the responsibility

of the Civil Engineer of Record and/or other design professionals who are responsible for pavement design to seal the final pavement design plans and associated specifications for this project.

Proper drainage should be provided both during and after construction. Emphasis should be given to areas where the pavement is placed directly adjacent to intersecting roadways and drives. Pavements should include a regular maintenance schedule to identify and seal cracks that may develop in the pavement surface to prevent water passing through the asphalt to the base or subgrade materials.

6.2 Behavior of Soils beneath Pavement

Near-surface soils at this site are considered to have a low potential for volume change with changes in soil moisture content. However, increased moisture content can result in reduced soil stiffness. The moisture content can be “stabilized” to some degree in these soils by covering them with an impermeable surface, such as pavement. However, if moisture is introduced as a result of surface water percolation through pavement joints and cracks or poor drainage, the soil strength can reduce, causing distress to pavements as traffic passes over.

The edges of pavement are particularly prone to moisture variations, and so these areas therefore often experience the most distress. When cracks appear on the surface of the pavement, these openings can allow moisture to enter the pavement subgrade, which can lead to further weakening of the pavement section as well as accelerated failure of the pavement surface.

In order to minimize the potential impacts of moisture-induced weakened soil on paved areas and to improve the long-term performance of the pavement, we have the following recommendations:

- Provide a crowned pavement, which provides maximum drainage away from the roadway, with a minimum slope of five percent within the first 5 feet. Drainage ditches should be of sufficient size and capacity to prevent water from ponding at the edges of the road.
- Subgrade treatments intended to increase the subgrade stability should extend to at least 18-inches beyond the back of curbs or edges of pavements.

6.3 Pavement Subgrade Preparation Recommendations

The anticipated subgrade soils in the proposed paving areas will consist of clayey sand, silty sand, silty clayey sand and sandy lean clay. These soils can become weak with appreciable increases in moisture content. A commonly used method to improve the strength properties of the subgrade soils, provide a working platform, and provide a uniform subgrade is to treat them with cement. Cement treatment is often used in

conjunction with compacted aggregate base when appreciable or heavy traffic loading is anticipated, and/or to reduce the asphalt thickness.

The following recommendations discuss subgrade preparation and two subgrade preparation alternatives if the existing roadway and base materials will not be reclaimed and utilized in-place.

6.3.1 Soil Preparation

- Strip the site of all asphalt and base, vegetation and remove any remaining organic or deleterious material under the planned paved areas. Typically, 6 to 8 inches should be sufficient for this purpose, though some areas may require deeper excavations.
- Cut as needed to required pavements subgrade elevation to accommodate the new roadways section.
- After stripping and performing any necessary cuts, the exposed subgrade should be proof rolled. Proof rolling should consist of rolling the entire pavement subgrade with a heavily-loaded, tandem-axle dump truck or fully loaded water truck weighing at least 25 tons or other approved equipment capable of applying similar loading conditions. Any soft, wet or weak soils that are observed to rut more than about 1/2-inch or pump excessively (exhibiting “waving” action) during proof rolling should be removed and replaced with well-compacted, on-site clayey material as outlined below. The proof rolling operation should be performed under the observation of a qualified geotechnical engineer.
- After proof rolling, scarify, rework, and recompact the exposed stripped subgrade to a minimum compacted depth of 6 inches. The scarified and reworked soils should be compacted to at least 95 percent of the maximum dry density, as determined by ASTM D698 (standard Proctor), and placed at a moisture content that is within two percentage points of the optimum moisture content, as determined by the same test ($\pm 2\%$). In areas that require fill, the fill should be placed in maximum 6-inch compacted lifts, compacted to at least 95 percent of the maximum dry density, as determined by ASTM D698 (standard Proctor), and placed at a moisture content within two percentage points of the optimum moisture content, as determined by the same test ($\pm 2\%$). Fill materials may be derived from on-site, or may be imported as long as the materials are essentially free of organic materials and particles in excess of 4 inches their maximum direction. Imported fill materials should have no less than 35 percent material passing a No. 200 mesh sieve and a Plasticity Index of no more than 30.

- Water should not be allowed to pond on the prepared surface once the subgrade soil has been brought to required grade. To that end, the subgrade surface should be shaped in a way that will allow water to shed to one or both edges of the prepared subgrade.
- Field density and moisture content testing should be performed at the rate of one test per lift per 300 linear feet of roadway.
- Surface grading adjacent to the edges of pavements should be sloped away from the edges to the maximum degree possible. Where minimum recommended slopes of adjacent surface grades cannot be achieved, the edges of the pavement section should be thickened a minimum of 2-foot wide along each edge.

6.3.2 Cement Treatment Recommendations

Once the subgrade is brought to required subgrade elevation, cement treatment may begin to achieve a treated compacted depth of 8-inches. We have the following recommendations for subgrade cement treatment:

- Cement treated subgrade should be prepared in accordance with TxDOT Item 275 to the elevations shown on the plans using an estimated three (3) percent cement by dry weight measure of the subgrade soil. The actual percentage to be used should be determined once the subgrade is at rough grade elevation. The amount of cement used should be the minimum amount required to achieve a 7-day cured unconfined compressive strength of 100 pounds per square inch.
- Cement should be applied such that mixing operations for a given area can be completed during the same working day.
- The cement may be placed dry or by the slurry method (meaning that the cement should be mixed with water in trucks or in tanks and applied as a thin slurry).
- After mixing, the soil-cement mixture should be tested for sufficient pulverization and mixing in accordance with TxDOT Item 275. The mixed material should meet the following requirements when tested dry by laboratory sieves:
 - Minimum passing 1 $\frac{3}{4}$ " sieve: 100%
 - Minimum passing $\frac{3}{4}$ " sieve: 85%
 - Minimum passing No. 4 sieve: 60%
- After sufficient re-mixing, the soil/cement mixture should be compacted to a minimum of 95% of Standard Proctor (ASTM D698) and to a moisture

content that is at or above the optimum moisture, as determined by that same test. Compaction should be completed within 2 hours after the application of water to the mixture of soil and cement.

- Cure for at least 3 days by “sprinkling” as described in TxDOT Item 204.
- To reduce the potential for subgrade soil moisture changes at the edges of pavements, the cement stabilized subgrade should extend a minimum of 18-inches past the back of the roadway curbs or edges of pavements.
- In order to reduce the potential for reflective cracking up through the pavement, particularly with asphalt pavement, the cement treated subgrade should be rolled with a vibratory roller 1 to 2 days after final compaction to create a network of hairline cracks (microcracking). Cure for at least 2 days by “sprinkling” as described in TxDOT Item 204 after completion of microcracking.
- Field density and moisture content testing should be performed at the rate of one test per lift per 100 linear feet of roadway. These tests are necessary to determine if the recommended moisture and compaction requirements have been attained.

6.3.3 Aggregate Base

As an alternative to, or in conjunction with, cement treatment, aggregate base may be placed over the prepared subgrades in accordance with the following recommendations prior to placing the pavements.

- After completing the subgrade preparation, place aggregate base as required in maximum 4 to 6-inch thick compacted lifts. The area of the aggregate base should extend a minimum of 18-inches beyond the edges of the pavement.
- Aggregate base, should be TxDOT Type A or D and meet the gradation, durability and plasticity requirements of TxDOT Item 247 Grade 1-2 or better (2014). The aggregate base material should be uniformly compacted to a minimum of 98% of the maximum standard Proctor dry density (ASTM D698) and placed at a moisture content that is sufficient to achieve density, but with a minimum of 4% moisture.
- Field density and moisture content testing should be performed at the rate of one test per 300 linear feet of roadway (approximately one test every 10,000 to 12,000 square feet).

6.4 Subgrade Strength Characteristics

Based on the present information, we recommend that a California Bearing Ratio (CBR) value of 8 be used in the design with a corresponding resilient modulus of 8,000 psi. These values were selected considering that clayey sands, sandy lean clays and silty clayey sands are projected to be present at final subgrade elevation over about 90% of the roadways alignment, and that these materials have a lower stiffness than the silty sands that are expected within few sections of the proposed roadways improvements.

6.5 Pavement Design Assumptions

Specific axle loading and traffic volume characteristics have not been provided at this time. After reviewing available traffic counts for roadways nearby the project sites using TXDOT District Traffic Web Viewer 2018 GIS data, the average daily traffic (ADT) ranges up to 4,867 vehicles per day. Based on the information provided by the client regarding the purpose of the new roadway, serving as a collector road, we have assumed an ADT of about 4,000 for our analysis and a percent trucks of 20%. If the actual number of ADT or percent trucks differs significantly from our assumptions, we recommend a separate analysis and pavement sections recommendations be performed.

- Design Life: 15 years
- Average Daily Traffic (ADT): 4,000
- Equivalent Single Axle Loads (ESAL's): 4,292,226
- Directional Distribution Factor: 50%
- Design Lane Distribution Factor: 100%
- Growth Rate: 2.0%
- Percent Trucks: 20.0%
- Truck Factor (ESALs/Truck): 1.7
- Initial Serviceability: 4.2
- Terminal Serviceability: 2.25

Considering that this is a new county road in a somewhat rural environment, we have assumed a reliability factor of 75%. If a higher value of reliability is required, the overall section will increase. Please contact this office if significant deviations from the assumptions above are anticipated.

In determination of roadway section alternatives, we used WinPAS 12 software and the following assumptions were made.

- Reliability: 75%
- Overall Standard Deviation: 0.45
- Subgrade Resilient Modulus: 8,000 psi
- Drainage Coefficient: 1.0
- Layer coefficient, Asphalt Cement Concrete: 0.44
- Layer coefficient, Soil Cement or Cement treated reclaimed pavement: 0.20
- Layer coefficient, Aggregate Base: 0.14

Minimizing subgrade saturation is an important factor in maintaining subgrade strength. Water should not be allowed to pond on or adjacent to the pavement that could saturate the pavement and lead to premature pavement deterioration. We recommend that all pavement surfaces be sloped to provide rapid surface drainage. Positive surface drainage away from the edge of the paved areas should be maintained.

6.6 Flexible Pavement Design and Recommendations

Flexible pavement surface course should conform to TxDOT Item 341 – “Dense-graded Hot Mix Asphalt” (HMA), or TxDOT Item 340 “Dense-graded Hot Mix Asphalt” (Small Quantity). The following subparagraphs provide recommendations for HMA based on the design assumptions noted previously. Actual loading conditions may require modifications.

6.7 Full Depth HMA

Full-depth HMA may consist of at least 1.5 inches of Type C or D surface course over 2 inches of Type B base course as specified by TxDOT Item 341 (or Item 340 as appropriate), or be entirely comprised of the surface course. Alternative options for flexible pavement section are included in Table 1, and is based on the subgrade CBR (8) and modulus (8,000 psi) values noted above.

Table 1. Alternative Flexible Pavement Sections for ADT = 4,000

Material Types	Based on Above Assumed Design Criteria	
	Alternative 1	Alternative 2
HMAC (in.)	3	3
Aggregate base (in.)	6	18
Cement-treated soil materials (in.)	8	--

6.8 Additional Pavement Section Evaluations

Based on the above assumptions, additional pavement section valuations were performed considering Midland County pavement standards of 3 inches asphalt on 11 inches of base and City of Midland pavement standards of 5.5 inches of asphalt (1.5 inches of Type D and 4 inches of Type B) on 6 inches of base material which showed the design life of 3 and 6.5 years, respectively. Also, an additional pavement section was evaluated for a 10-year design life based on above assumptions. The section corresponding to this evaluation showed 3inches of asphalt on 16 inches of base materials.

6.9 HMA Installation and Testing

The following is recommended for HMA:

- HMAC should be placed and compacted to contain between 5 and 9 percent of air voids.
- The target density for asphalt lifts should be 91 to 95 percent of the Maximum Theoretical Specific Gravity as determined by laboratory testing.

The following tests should be performed:

- In place field density tests to establish a rolling pattern.
- One extraction and gradation test per day's HMAC placement.
- Two cores to verify thickness and density per 5,000 feet of roadway placed.

7.0 CULVERTS

Eight culvert crossings were originally planned along the proposed alignment of the new roadway. As mentioned earlier, seven borings were drilled for the culvert crossings and one boring was not drilled due to muddy soil conditions. The new alignment of the roadway is updated and has shifted approximately 1,500 feet south at the east side of the project limits.

We understand that pre-cast concrete rectangular culverts will be provided at the locations to convey runoff from one side of the roadway to the other. We anticipate that the culverts will be placed on a conventionally reinforced concrete mat foundation (base slab).

Recommendations for subgrade preparation to provide a working surface for construction and reduce the potential for bearing on soft soils are described below. The culverts mat foundation may be designed using an allowable bearing capacity of 2,000 pounds per square foot when placed on the prepared subgrade as described below.

The prepared subgrades for the culverts should be essentially free of any loose or soft material prior to the placement of the culvert.

For the culverts subgrades, we have the following recommendations for earthwork.

- Strip the site of all vegetation, organic soil, and deleterious material within the new culvert area. Typically, 6 to 12 inches is sufficient for this purpose.
- After stripping and performing any necessary cuts, excavate the culvert area to a depth of 2 feet below the underside of the base slab. The excavation should extend at least 5 feet beyond the edges of the new structure.
- Place a filter fabric on top of the excavated subgrade followed by a geogrid. The geotextile may be US Fabrics US 315 or approved equivalent. Geogrid may be Tensar TX5, or approved equivalent. The fabric and grid should extend to the limits of the excavation.
- Provide a minimum of 24-inches of flexible base on top of the geogrid. Flexible base should meet the gradation, plasticity, and durability requirements of TxDOT Standard Specification Item 247, Type A or D, Grade 3 or better (TxDOT 2014 specifications). These materials should be placed in maximum 4-inch thick compacted lifts and should be compacted to at least 95 percent of the maximum density as determined by the Standard Moisture Density Relationship test (ASTM D 698), and should be placed at a moisture content sufficient to achieve the required density.
- Water should not be allowed to pond on the prepared subgrade either during fill placement, or after reaching final subgrade elevation. To that end, the subgrade surfaces should be shaped to shed water to the edges of the excavation.
- Following placement of the culverts, in order to prevent a hard point with reference to the road surfacing we recommend a minimum of 15 inches of compacted soil be provided over the top of the culverts and below the asphalt pavement. The compacted soil should be placed as described in Section 6.3.1.
- Consideration should be given to streambed and bank erosion protection on both sides of the roadway. Erosion protection may be accomplished with gabion mattresses, concrete rip rap, or other large stone rip rap. Regardless of the final protective layer, a filter fabric be placed between the natural soil and the protective layer.
- Each lift of fill placed should be tested for moisture content and degree of compaction by a testing laboratory at the rate of three tests performed per lift within the culvert pad. D&S would be pleased to provide these services in support of this project.

8.0 RETAINING WALLS

We understand that retaining walls will be provided for culverts headwalls and wingwalls within the crossings. We anticipate that the retaining walls will be placed on a conventionally reinforced concrete footing. The footing may be designed using an allowable bearing capacity of 2,000 pounds per square foot when placed on the prepared subgrade as described below.

8.1 Lateral Earth Pressures

Retaining walls will be subjected to lateral earth pressures and should be designed in consideration of these forces. Earth pressures will be influenced by structural design of the walls, conditions of wall restraint, methods of construction and/or compaction, the strength of the materials being restrained, and drainage conditions.

Two wall restraint conditions are typically considered. Active earth pressure is commonly used for design of free-standing cantilever retaining walls and assumes some small outward rotation of the wall. This condition is applicable to site retaining walls. The "at-rest" condition assumes that no wall rotation or movement will occur. This condition is typically considered where minimal movement of the wall is desired, for movement sensitive walls, basement walls and walls rigidly connected to lower and upper floors (or roofs). "At-rest" condition would be applicable for the retaining wall.

The design lateral earth pressures recommended herein do not include a Factor of Safety and do not provide for dynamic pressures on the walls.

Lateral loads due to surcharge should be calculated as shown in Table 2. A coefficient of friction against sliding may be taken as 0.35 (ultimate) for concrete cast against compacted aggregate base. A passive pressure value of 230 psf may be used below a depth of 2 feet from final grade.

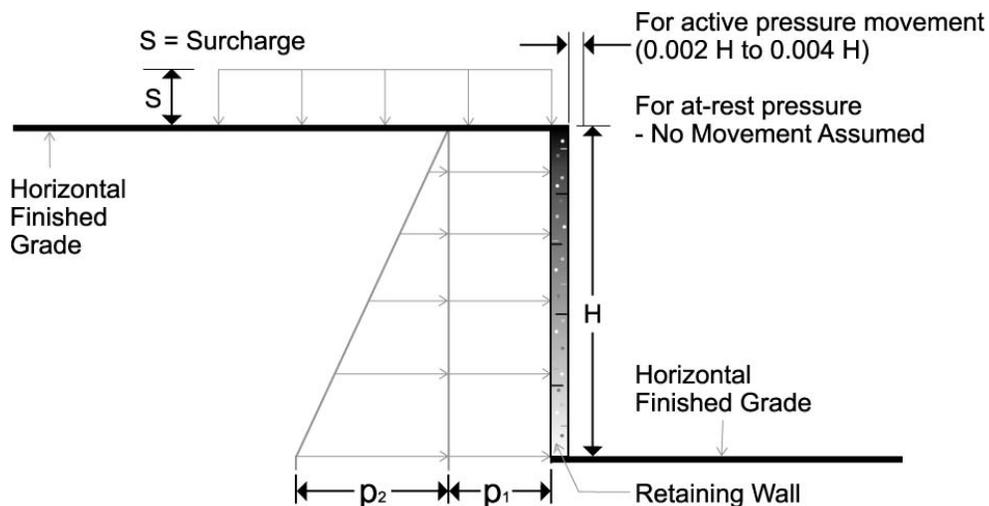


Figure 1: Lateral Earth Pressure

Table 2. Lateral Earth Pressures

Earth Pressure Conditions	Coefficient for Backfill Type	Undrained Equivalent Fluid Density (pcf)	Surcharge Pressure (psf) p1	Earth Pressure (psf) p2
At-Rest (K_o)	On-Site Soils - 0.58	99	(0.58) S ¹	(99) H ²

Notes: ⁽¹⁾ S = surcharge pressure⁽²⁾ H = wall height

Applicable conditions to Table 2 above include:

- Horizontal backfill, compacted to 95 to 98 percent of Standard Proctor maximum dry density for cohesive soils horizontal finished grades at the top and bottom of the retaining wall
- Uniform surcharge, where S is surcharge pressure
- A maximum in situ soil total unit weight of 125 pcf
- No loading contribution from compaction equipment

Heavy compactors should not be allowed to operate within 5 feet of the walls during backfilling to avoid developing excessive temporary or long-term lateral soil pressures. A qualified geotechnical engineer or geotechnical representative should be present to monitor all foundation excavations and fill placement. D&S would be pleased to provide these services in support of this project.

For the retaining wall subgrade, we have the following recommendations for earthwork.

- Strip the site of all vegetation, organic soil, and deleterious material within the new retaining walls area. Typically, 6 to 8 inches is sufficient for this purpose.
- After stripping and performing any necessary cuts, excavate the retaining wall area to a depth of 2 feet below the underside of the retaining wall footing
- Place a filter fabric on top of the excavated subgrade. The geotextile may be US Fabrics US 315 or approved equivalent.
- Provide a minimum of 24-inches of flexible base on top of the filter fabric. Flexible base should meet the gradation, plasticity, and durability requirements of TxDOT Standard Specification Item 247, Type A or D, Grade 3 or better (TxDOT 2014 specifications). These materials should be placed in maximum 4-inch thick compacted lifts and should be compacted to at least 95 percent of the maximum density as determined by the Standard Moisture Density

Relationship test (ASTM D698), and should be placed at a moisture content sufficient to achieve the required density.

- Water should not be allowed to pond on the prepared subgrade either during fill placement, or after reaching final subgrade elevation. To that end, the subgrade surfaces should be shaped to shed water to the edges of the excavation.
- Each lift of fill placed should be tested for moisture content and degree of compaction by a testing laboratory at the rate of three tests performed per lift within the culvert pad. D&S would be pleased to provide these services in support of this project.

9.0 OTHER CONSTRUCTION

9.1 Utility Lines and Culverts

Backfill placed within utility/culvert trenches that cross pavements should be properly compacted. If these areas are not properly compacted, settlement will occur and distress to the pavement is likely. All backfill should be placed in lifts, properly compacted and tested in accordance to the appropriate earthwork recommendations provided.

Trenches should be opened a sufficient width to safely allow compaction equipment access to the backfill and for confirmation testing to occur. The backfill should be placed in horizontal lifts. Excavations greater than 5 feet in height/depth should be in accordance with OSHA 29CFR 1926, Subpart P. The site soils should be assumed to be Type "C" soil.

Backfill for utility lines should consist of on-site material and should be placed in accordance with the following recommendations. The on-site fill soil should be placed in maximum 6-inch compacted lifts, compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of the maximum dry density, as determined by ASTM D698 (standard Proctor), and placed at a moisture content that is at least the optimum moisture content, as determined by that same test. We also recommend that the utility trenches be visually inspected during the excavation process to ensure that undesirable fill that was not detected by the test borings does not exist at the site. This office should be notified immediately if any such fill is detected.

Utility excavations should be sloped so that water within excavations will flow to a low point away from the active construction where it can be removed from before backfilling. Compaction of bedding material should not be water-jetted. Compacted backfill above the utilities should be on-site clayey soils to limit the percolation of surface water.

9.2 Surface Drainage

Proper drainage is critical to the performance of the paved areas. Positive surface drainage should be provided that directs water away from pavements edges. Where possible, we recommend that a slope of at least 5 percent be provided for the first 5 feet away from pavement edges. The slopes should direct water away from the pavement and should be maintained throughout construction and the life of the pavement.

9.3 Excavations and Excavation Difficulties

Excavations greater than 5 feet in height/depth should be in accordance with OSHA 29CFR 1926, Subpart P. Temporary construction slopes should incorporate excavation protection systems or should be sloped back.

Excavations performed during utility construction operations in soil should not be difficult and should not require the use of special construction equipment. However, at a depth of 1.1 feet within Boring B1, a very hard layer is present. In order to determine the nature of the hard layer a test pit will need to be excavated.

If the very hard material is a caliche caprock layer, appropriate hard rock excavation equipment will be required. Such heavy equipment should be of a sufficient size and weight to excavate through the hard layers to reach the desired bearing stratum. These bedrock materials can typically be excavated with backhoes/track-hoes equipped with rock teeth, single tooth rippers and hydraulic impact hammers. Where it is desired to maintain close excavations tolerances in the bedrock, trenching machines, rock wheel excavators should also be considered. Another method commonly used for excavations into bedrock is closely spaced, small-diameter holes drilled typically by air-rotary methods along an excavation line (commonly referred to as "line-drilling"). This line drilling creates a preferred plane of weakness for subsequent excavation. The excavated rock surface is expected to be irregular. Over breaks in the rock should also be expected. Loose rock fragments should be removed from the exposed face of rock cuts. Any rock faces, which could be subject to spalling identified by the competent person, should be covered with metal chain link, welded wire mesh, or other suitable covering to avoid rock spalls. Rock bolts/anchors may also be used at approximately 4 to 5 foot centers. Surface water should be diverted away from excavations.

Overburden soils above the bedrock will need to be sloped at 1.5H:1V or flatter. A minimum 2-foot wide bench should be required at the base of the overburden soils, at the top of the bedrock. The bedrock can very likely be cut in the range 0.75H:1V to 0.5H:1V. As excavation proceeds through the bedrock, the surface of the exposed bedrock should be carefully examined by the competent person for weakening due to weather exposure, joints and fractures, seepage, or other planes of weakness and the slope should be flattened or shored as required

Analyses of slope or trench wall stability in excavations are beyond the scope of this study and have not been performed. In all cases, the requirements of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) must be followed by the contractor. It is important for the contractor to monitor the slope and pit wall stability by observation and measurements, and to prevent excessive loads (especially heavy vibratory loads) from being applied to the slope. The contractor should be responsible for maintaining the slopes and pit walls in a safe condition during construction. A qualified geotechnical engineer or geotechnical representative should be present to monitor all foundation excavations and fill placement. D&S would be pleased to provide these services in support of this project.

10.0 LIMITATIONS

The professional geotechnical engineering services performed for this project, the findings obtained, and the recommendations prepared were accomplished in accordance with currently accepted geotechnical engineering principles and practices.

Variations in the subsurface conditions are noted at the specific boring locations for this study. As such, all users of this report should be aware that differences in depths and thicknesses of strata encountered can vary between the boring locations. Statements in the report as to subsurface conditions across the site are extrapolated from the data obtained at the specific boring locations. The number and spacing of the exploration borings were chosen to obtain geotechnical information for the design and construction of pavements, culverts and retaining walls. If there are any conditions differing significantly from those described herein, D&S should be notified to re-evaluate the recommendations contained in this report.

Recommendations contained herein are not considered applicable for an indefinite period of time. Our office must be contacted to re-evaluate the contents of this report if construction does not begin within a one-year period after completion of this report.

The scope of services provided herein does not include an environmental assessment of the site or preliminary investigation for the presence or absence of hazardous materials in the soil, surface water, or groundwater.

All contractors referring to this geotechnical report should draw their own conclusions regarding excavations, construction, etc. for bidding purposes. D&S is not responsible for conclusions, opinions or recommendations made by others based on these data. The report is intended to guide preparation of project specifications and should not be used as a substitute for the project specifications.

Recommendations provided in this report are based on our understanding of information provided by the Client to us regarding the scope of work for this project. If the Client notes any differences, our office should be contacted immediately since this may materially alter the recommendations.

APPENDIX A - BORING LOGS AND SUPPORTING DATA



BORING LOCATIONS ARE INTENDED FOR GRAPHICAL REFERENCE ONLY



MIDLAND

PLAN OF BORINGS

CR 1232

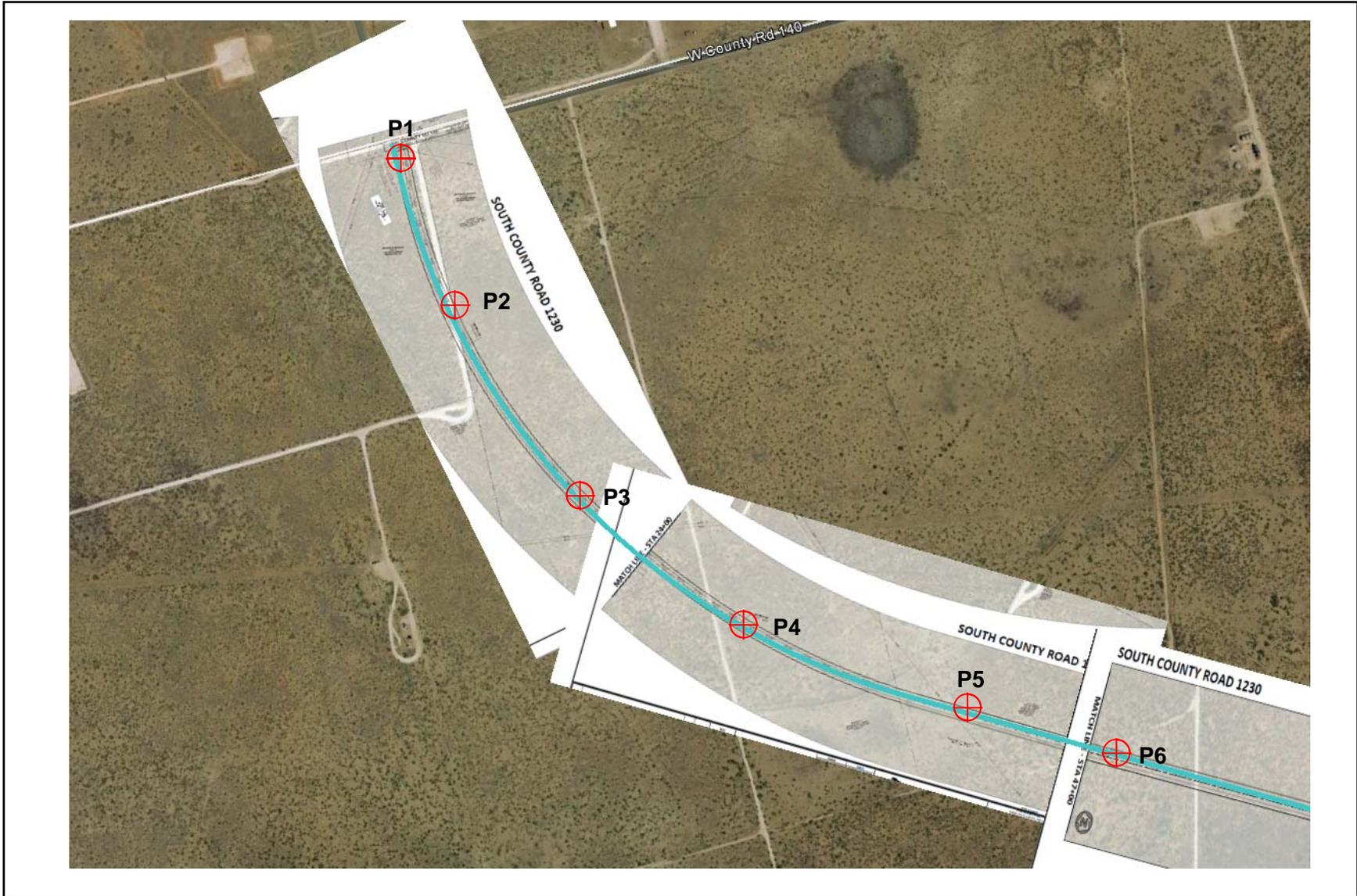
TEXAS

SHEET NO.

G1

DATE DRILLED

August 22 - 29, 2019



****BORING LOCATIONS ARE INTENDED FOR GRAPHICAL REFERENCE ONLY****



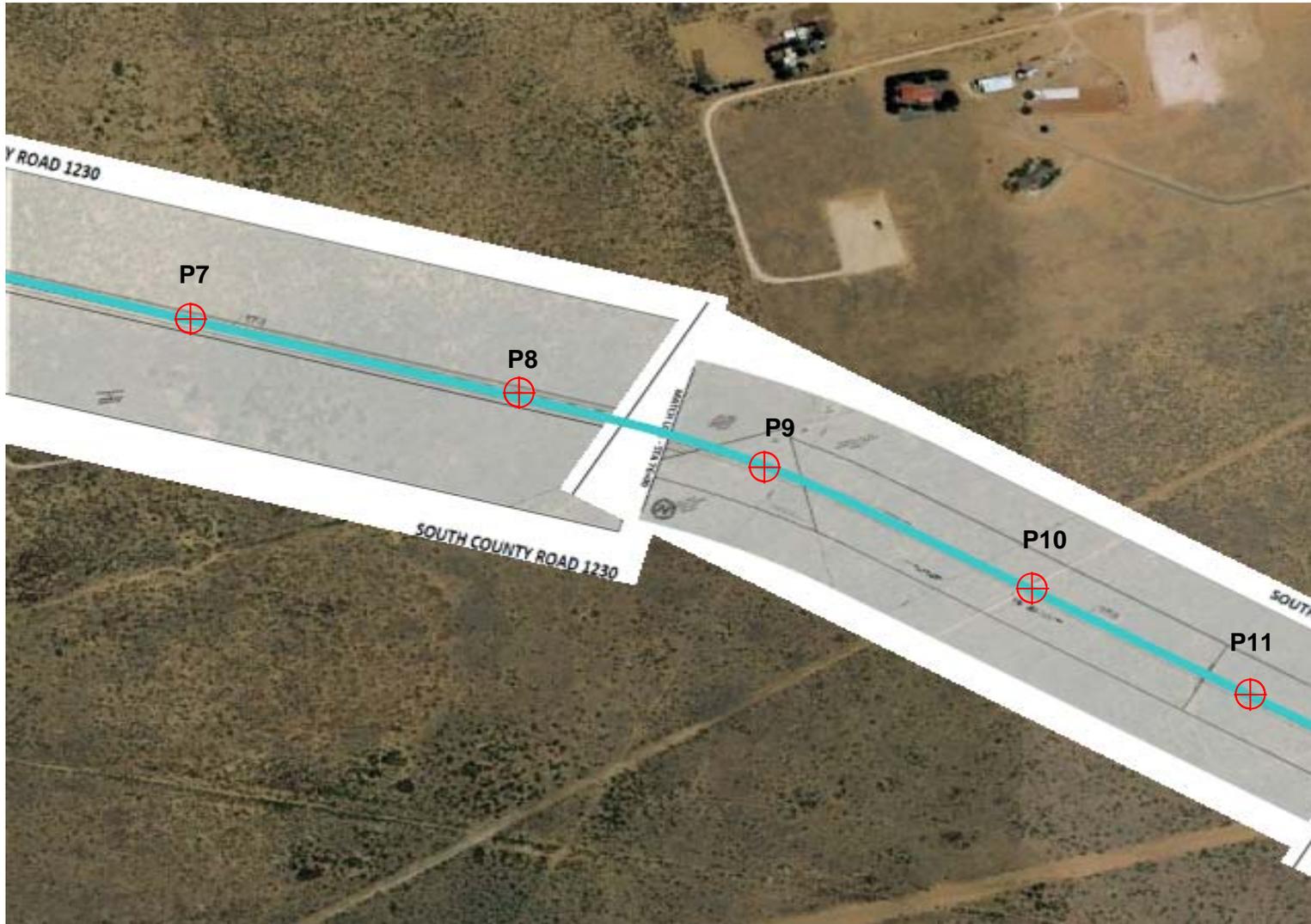
MIDLAND

PLAN OF BORINGS
CR 1232

TEXAS

SHEET NO.
G2

DATE DRILLED
August 22 – 29, 2019



BORING LOCATIONS ARE INTENDED FOR GRAPHICAL REFERENCE ONLY



MIDLAND

PLAN OF BORINGS

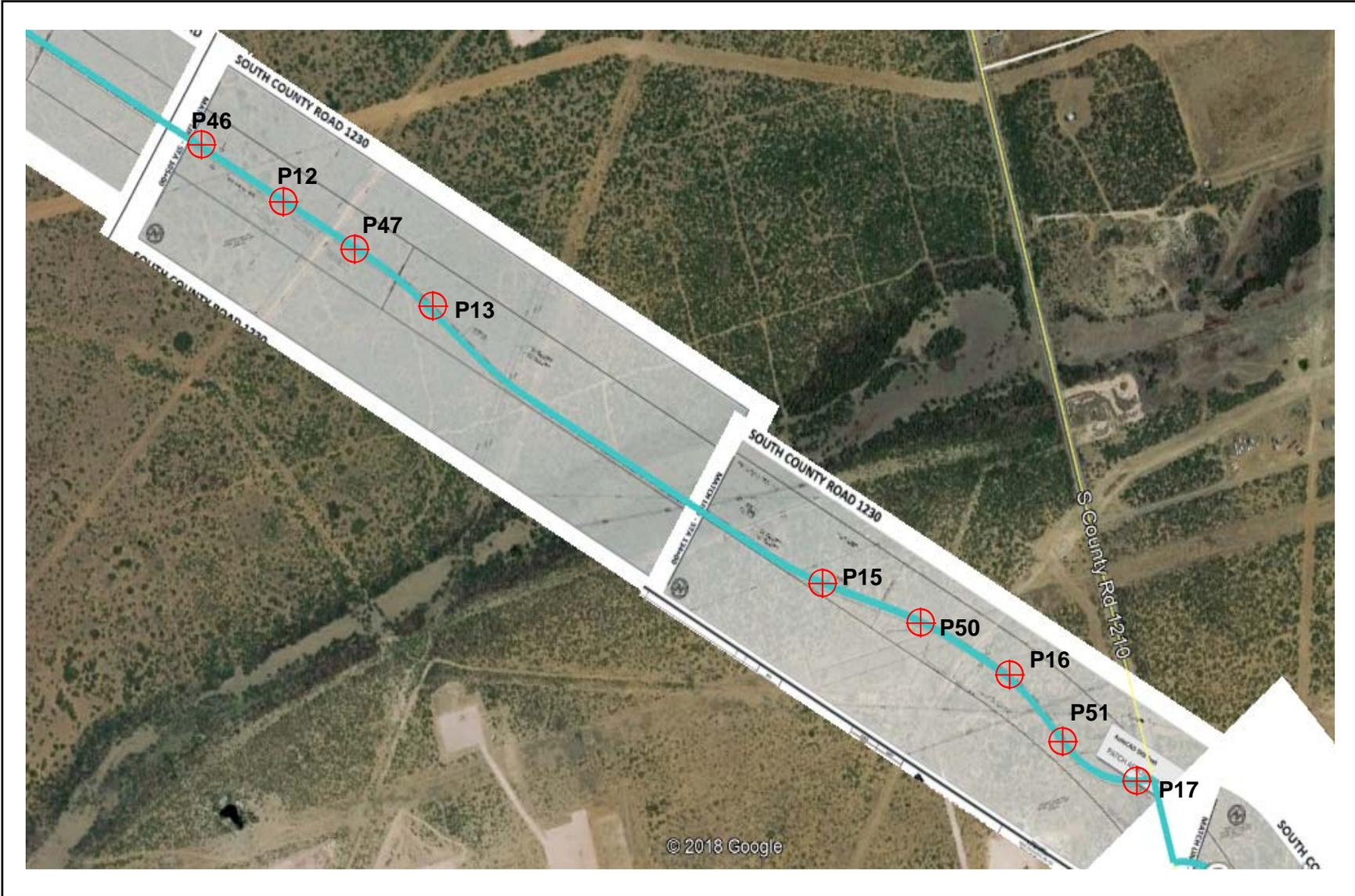
CR 1232

TEXAS

SHEET NO.

G3

DATE DRILLED
August 22 - 29, 2019



BORING LOCATIONS ARE INTENDED FOR GRAPHICAL REFERENCE ONLY



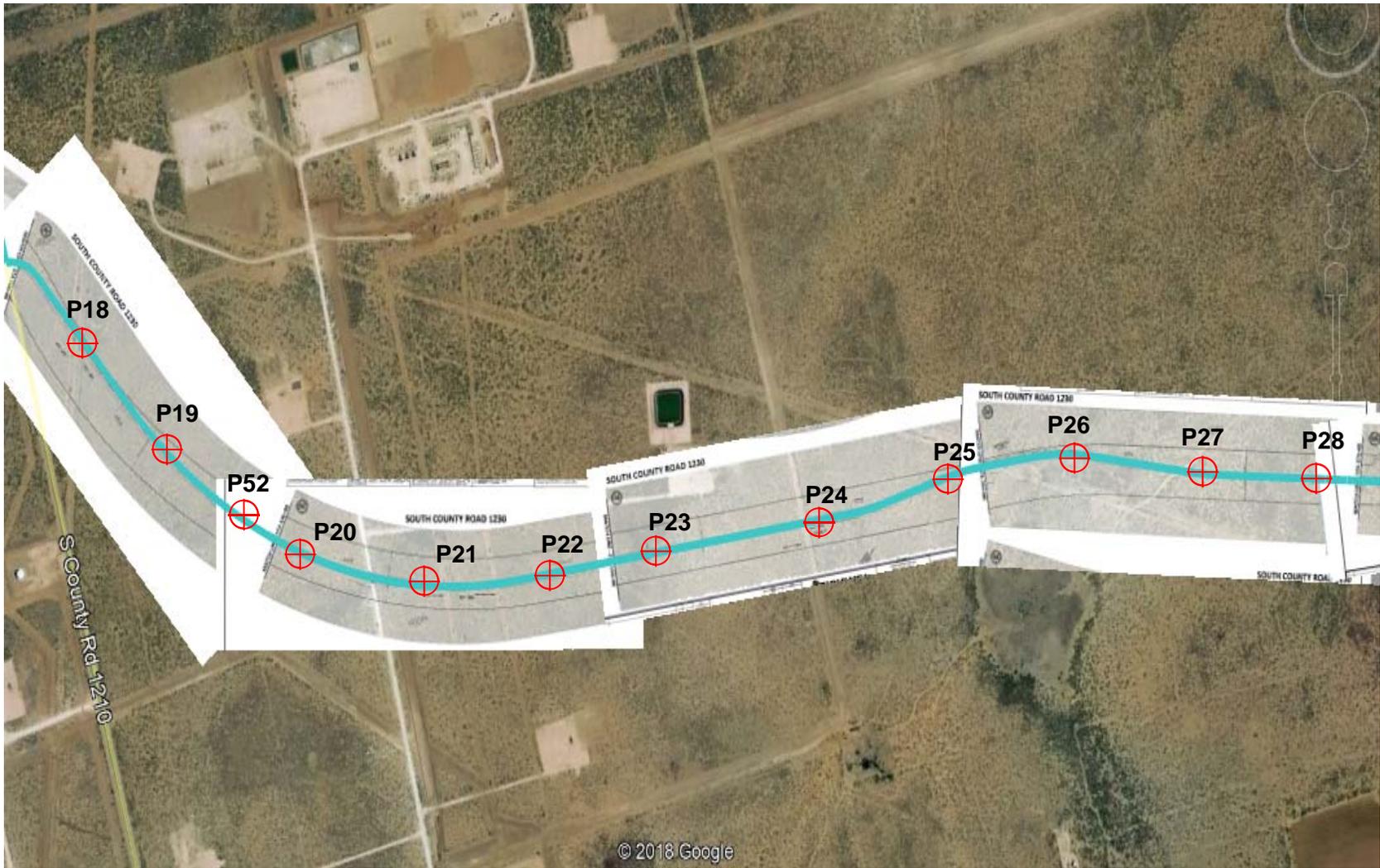
MIDLAND

PLAN OF BORINGS
CR 1232

TEXAS

SHEET NO.
G4

DATE DRILLED
August 22 – 29, 2019



BORING LOCATIONS ARE INTENDED FOR GRAPHICAL REFERENCE ONLY



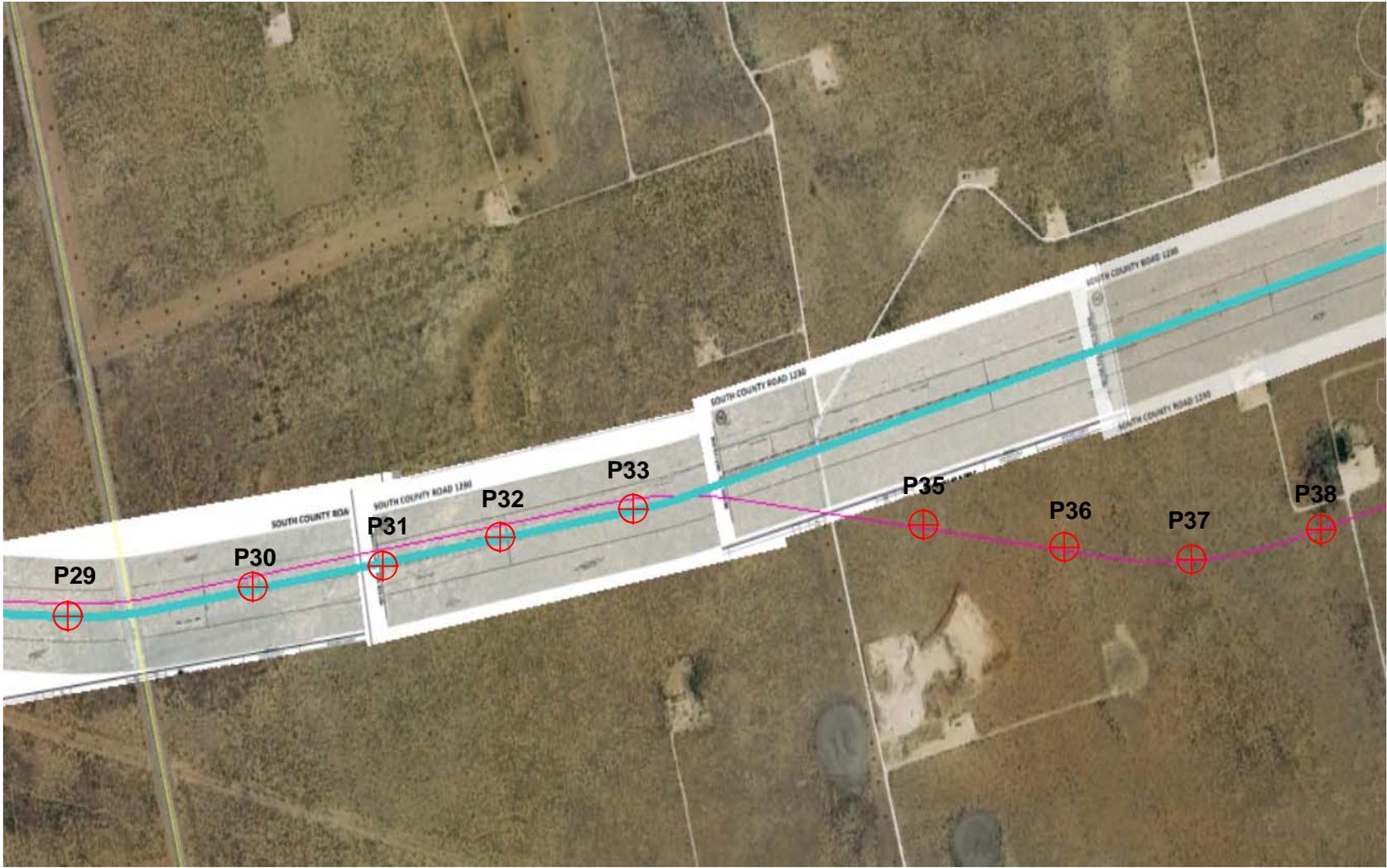
MIDLAND

PLAN OF BORINGS
CR 1232

TEXAS

SHEET NO.
G5

DATE DRILLED
August 22 – 29, 2019



****BORING LOCATIONS ARE INTENDED FOR GRAPHICAL REFERENCE ONLY****



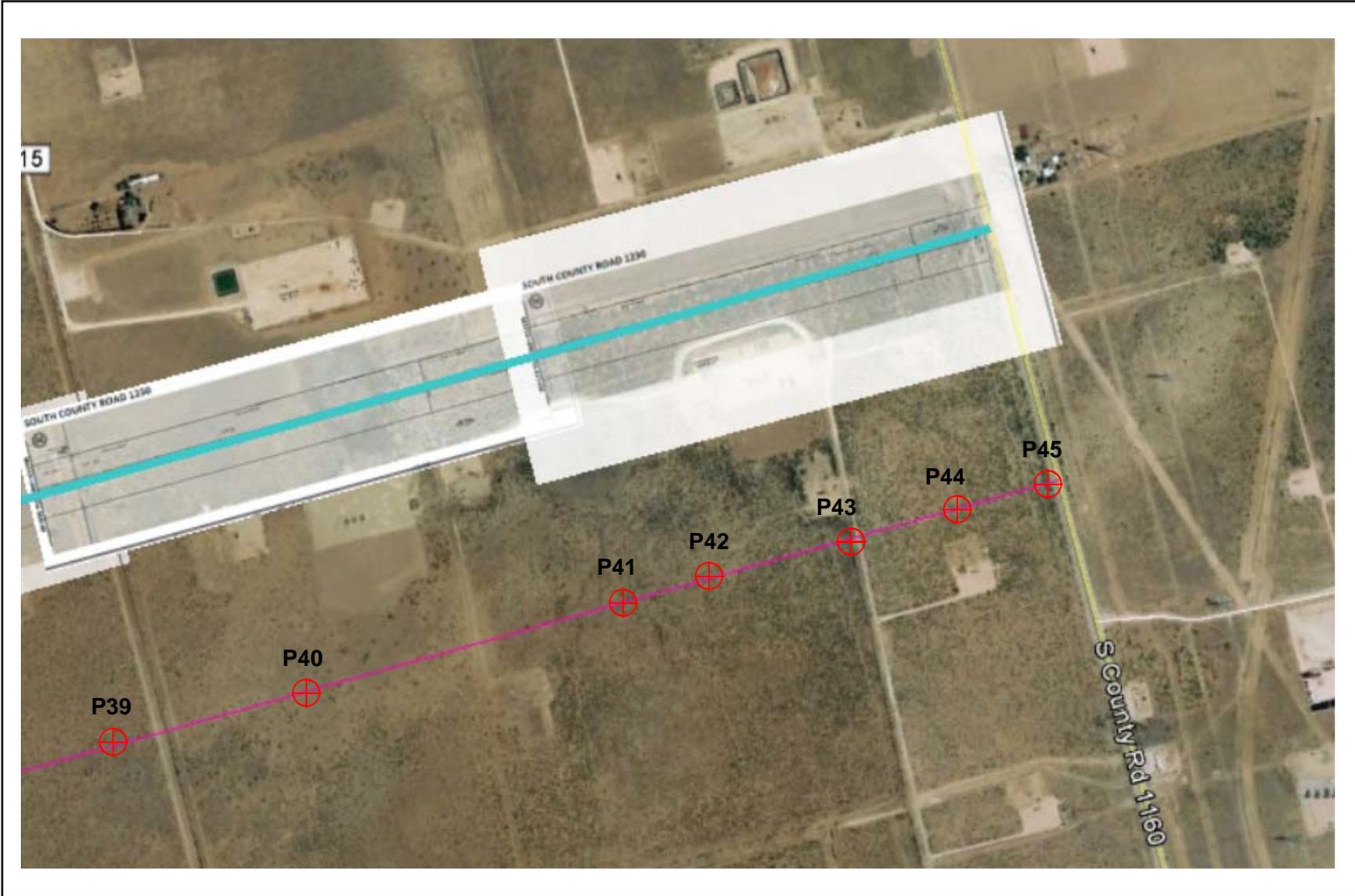
MIDLAND

PLAN OF BORINGS
CR 1232

TEXAS

SHEET NO.
G6

DATE DRILLED
August 22 – 29, 2019



BORING LOCATIONS ARE INTENDED FOR GRAPHICAL REFERENCE ONLY



MIDLAND

PLAN OF BORINGS
CR 1232

TEXAS

SHEET NO.
G7

DATE DRILLED
August 22 – 29, 2019

LITHOLOGIC SYMBOLS

ARTIFICIAL		Asphalt
		Aggregate Base
		Concrete
		Fill

SOIL		CH: High Plasticity Clay
		CL: Low Plasticity Clay
		GP: Poorly-graded Gravel
		GW: Well-graded Gravel
		SC: Clayey Sand
		SP: Poorly-graded Sand
		SW: Well-graded Sand

ROCK		Limestone
		Mudstone
		Shale
		Sandstone
		Weathered Limestone
		Weathered Shale
		Weathered Sandstone

CONSISTENCY OF SOILS

CONSISTENCY: FINE GRAINED SOILS		
Consistency	SPT (# blows/ft)	UCS (tsf)
Very Soft	0 - 2	< 0.25
Soft	3 - 4	0.25 - 0.5
Medium Stiff	5 - 8	0.5 - 1.0
Stiff	9 - 15	1.0 - 2.0
Very Stiff	16 - 30	2.0 - 4.0
Hard	> 30	> 4.0

CONDITION OF SOILS

CONDITION: COARSE GRAINED SOILS			
Condition	SPT (# blows/ft)	TCP (#blows/ft)	Relative Density (%)
Very Loose	0 - 4	< 8	0 - 15
Loose	5 - 10	8 - 20	15 - 35
Medium Dense	11 - 30	20 - 60	35 - 65
Dense	31 - 50	60 - 100	65 - 85
Very Dense	> 50	> 100	85 - 100

SECONDARY COMPONENTS

QUANTITY DESCRIPTORS	
Trace	< 5% of sample
Few	5% to 10%
Little	10% to 25%
Some	25% to 35%
With	> 35%

RELATIVE HARDNESS OF ROCK MASS

Designation	Description
Very Soft	Can be carved with a knife. Can be excavated readily with point of pick. Pieces 1" or more in thickness can be broken by finger pressure. Readily scratched with fingernail.
Soft	Can be gouged or grooved readily with knife or pick point. Can be excavated in chips to pieces several inches in size by moderate blows with the pick point. Small, thin pieces can be broken by finger pressure.
Medium Hard	Can be grooved or gouged 1/4" deep by firm pressure on knife or pick point. Can be excavated in small chips to pieces about 1" maximum size by hard blows with the point of a pick.
Moderately Hard	Can be scratched with knife or pick. Gouges or grooves 1/4" deep can be excavated by hard blow of the point of a pick. Hand specimens can be detached by a moderate blow.
Hard	Can be scratched with knife or pick only with difficulty. Hard blow of hammer required to detach a hand specimen.
Very Hard	Cannot be scratched with knife or sharp pick. Breaking of hand specimens requires several hard blows from a hammer or pick.

WEATHERING OF ROCK MASS

Designation	Description
Fresh	No visible sign of weathering
Slightly weathered	Penetrative weathering on open discontinuity surfaces, but only slight weathering of rock material
Moderately weathered	Weathering extends throughout rock mass, but the rock material is not friable
Highly weathered	Weathering extends throughout rock mass, and the rock material is partly friable
Completely weathered	Rock is wholly decomposed and in a friable condition but the rock texture and structure are preserved
Residual Soil	A soil material with the original texture, structure, and mineralogy of the rock completely destroyed

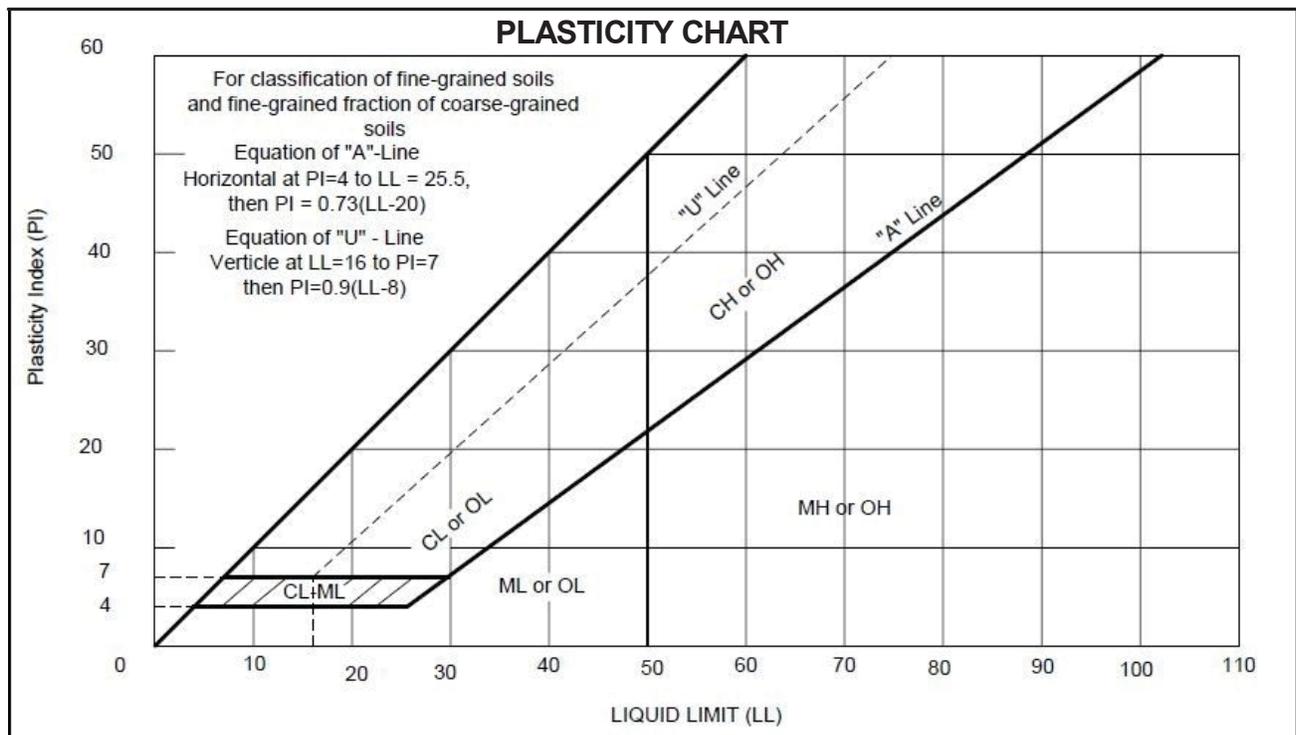


UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

ADAPTED FROM ASTM D 2487

SOIL CLASSIFICATION CHART

MAJOR DIVISIONS			GROUP SYMBOL	GROUP NAME
COARSE GRAINED SOILS MORE THAN 50% OF MATERIAL IS RETAINED ON THE NO. 200 SIEVE	GRAVELS MORE THAN 50% OF COARSE FRACTION RETAINED ON NO. 4 SIEVE	CLEAN GRAVELS <i>Cu</i> ≥ 4 and 1 ≤ <i>Cc</i> ≤ 3 (LESS THAN 5% FINES)	GW	WELL-GRADED GRAVEL
		 GRAVELS WITH FINES (MORE THAN 12% FINES)	GP	POORLY-GRADED GRAVEL
		 GRAVELS WITH FINES (MORE THAN 12% FINES)	GM	SILTY GRAVEL
		 GRAVELS WITH FINES (MORE THAN 12% FINES)	GC	CLAYEY GRAVEL
	SANDS MORE THAN 50% OF COARSE FRACTION PASSING THE NO. 4 SIEVE	CLEAN SANDS <i>Cu</i> ≥ 6 and 1 ≤ <i>Cc</i> ≤ 3 (LESS THAN 5% FINES)	SW	WELL-GRADED SAND
		 SANDS WITH FINES (MORE THAN 12% FINES)	SP	POORLY-GRADED SAND
		 SANDS WITH FINES (MORE THAN 12% FINES)	SM	SILTY SAND
		 SANDS WITH FINES (MORE THAN 12% FINES)	SC	CLAYEY SAND
FINE GRAINED SOILS MORE THAN 50% OF MATERIAL PASSES THROUGH THE NO. 200 SIEVE	SILTS AND CLAYS LIQUID LIMIT LESS THAN 50	INORGANIC PI > 7 and plots on or above "A" line	CL	LEAN CLAY
		INORGANIC PI < 4 or plots below "A" line	ML	SILT
	SILTS AND CLAYS LIQUID LIMIT GREATER THAN 50	ORGANIC $\frac{\text{Liquid limit} - \text{oven dried}}{\text{Liquid limit} - \text{not dried}} < 0.75$	OL	ORGANIC CLAY ORGANIC SILT
		INORGANIC PI plots on or above "A" line	CH	FAT CLAY
		INORGANIC PI plots below "A" line	MH	ELASTIC SILT
		ORGANIC $\frac{\text{Liquid limit} - \text{oven dried}}{\text{Liquid limit} - \text{not dried}} < 0.75$	OH	ORGANIC CLAY ORGANIC SILT
HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS	PRIMARILY ORGANIC MATTER, DARK IN COLOR, AND ORGANIC ODOR		PT	PEAT





BORING LOG

P46

PAGE 1 OF 1

PROJECT: CR 1232 Phase 2	LOCATION: Midland, Texas
CLIENT: Dunaway Associates	GPS COORDINATES: N31.899224, W102.098326
PROJECT NUMBER: G18-2150-C	GROUND ELEVATION:
START DATE: 8/26/2019 FINISH DATE: 8/26/2019	DRILL METHOD: Hollow Stem Flight Auger
LOGGED BY: Kofi Yeboah (D&S)	DRILLED BY: Charles Ray Stephens (D&S)

Depth (ft)	Sample Type	Hand Pen. (tsf) or SPT or TCP	Graphic Log	Legend: <input type="checkbox"/> S-Shelby Tube <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> N-Standard Penetration <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> T-Texas Cone Penetration <input type="checkbox"/> C-Core <input type="checkbox"/> B-Bag Sample <input type="checkbox"/> - Water Encountered	REC (%) RQD (%)	MC (%)	Atterberg Limits			Passing #200 Sieve (%)	Total Suction (pF)	Clay (%)	Swell (%)	DUW (pcf)	Unconf. Compr. Str. (ksf)	
							LL (%)	PL (%)	PI							
0																
	N	2,2,4		SILTY SAND (SM); loose to medium dense; brown, reddish brown; trace clay seams		1.6										
	N	7,9,9				3.1	18	15	3	25						
5	N	7,10,15														
	N	11,14,11														
10	N	9,11,14			11.0 ft		8.7				39					
	N	17,24,33	14.5 ft	SILTY SAND (SM); medium dense to very dense; light brown, white; locally referred to as "caliche"	7.7											
15			End of boring at 14.5'													
			Notes: -dry during drilling -dry upon completion													
20																
25																
30																
35																

APPENDIX B - GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF PROCEDURES

ANALYTICAL METHODS TO PREDICT MOVEMENT

INDEX PROPERTY AND CLASSIFICATION TESTING

Classification testing is perhaps the most basic, yet fundamental tool available for predicting potential movements of clay soils. Classification testing typically consists of moisture content, Atterberg Limits, and Grain-size distribution determinations. From these results a general assessment of a soil's propensity for volume change with changes in soil moisture content can be made.

Moisture Content

By studying the moisture content of the soils at varying depths and comparing them with the results of Atterberg Limits, one can estimate a rough order of magnitude of potential soil movement at various moisture contents, as well as movements with moisture changes. These tests are typically performed in accordance with ASTM D2216.

Atterberg Limits

Atterberg limits determine the liquid limit (LL), plastic limit (PL), and plasticity index (PI) of a soil. The liquid limit is the moisture content at which a soil begins to behave as a viscous fluid. The plastic limit is the moisture content at which a soil becomes workable like putty, and at which a clay soil begins to crumble when rolled into a thin thread (1/8" diameter). The PI is the numerical difference between the moisture constants at the liquid limit and the plastic limit. This test is typically performed in accordance with ASTM D4318.

Clay mineralogy and the particle size influence the Atterberg Limits values, with certain minerals (e.g., montmorillonite) and smaller particle sizes having higher PI values, and therefore higher movement potential.

A soil with a PI below about 15 to 18 is considered to be generally stable and should not experience significant movement with changes in moisture content. Soils with a PI above about 30 to 35 are considered to be highly active and may exhibit considerable movement with changes in moisture content.

Fat clays with very high liquid limits, weakly cemented sandy clays, or silty clays are examples of soils in which it can be difficult to predict movement from classification testing alone.

Grain-size Distribution

The simplest grain-size distribution test involves washing a soil specimen over the No. 200 mesh sieve with an opening size of 0.075 mm (ASTM D1140). This particle size has been defined by the engineering community as the demarcation between coarse-grained and fine-grained soils. Particles smaller than this size can be further distinguished between silt-size and clay-size particles by use of a Hydrometer test (ASTM D422). A more complete grain-size distribution test that uses sieves to relative amount of particles according is the Sieve Gradation Analysis of Soils (ASTM D6913). Once the characteristics of the soil are determined through classification testing, a number of movement prediction techniques are available to predict the potential movement of the soils. Some of these are discussed in general below.

TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION METHOD 124-E

The Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) has developed a generally simplistic method to predict movements for highways based on the plasticity index of the soil. The TxDOT method is empirical and is based on the Atterberg limits and moisture content of the subsurface soil. This method generally assumes three different initial moisture conditions: dry, "as-is", and wet. Computation of each over an assumed depth of seasonal moisture variation (usually about 15 feet or less) provides an estimate of potential movement at each initial condition. This method requires a number of additional assumptions to develop a potential movement estimate. As such, the predicted movements generally possess large uncertainties when applied to the analysis of conditions under pavements.

POTENTIAL VERTICAL MOVEMENT

A general index for movement is known as the Potential Vertical Rise (PVR). The actual term PVR refers to the TxDOT Method 124-E mentioned above. For the purpose of this report the term Potential Vertical Movement (PVM) will be used since PVM estimates are derived using multiple analytical techniques, and not just TxDOT methods.

Vertical movement of clay soils under pavements resulting to soil moisture changes can result from a variety causes, including poor site grading and drainage, improperly prepared subgrade, trees and large shrubbery located too close to structures, utility leaks or breaks, poor subgrade maintenance such as inadequate or excessive irrigation, or other causes.

PVM is generally considered to be a measurement of the change in height of a foundation from the elevation it was originally placed. Experience and generally accepted practice suggests that if the PVM of a site is less than one inch, the associated differential movement will be minor and acceptable to most people.

TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION METHOD 101-E

This method describes three procedures for preparation of soil and flexible base samples for soil constants and particle size analysis, compaction and triaxial, and sieve analysis of road-mixed material.

TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION METHOD 401-A

This method involves sieve analysis and is used to determine the particle size distribution of mineral fillers and coarse and fine aggregates for Portland cement concrete.

TEXAS DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION METHOD 116-E

This method determines the resistance of aggregate in flexible base material to disintegration in the presence of water. The test provides a measure of the ability of the material to withstand degradation in the road base and detects soft aggregate that is subject to weathering. The result of this test is the Wet Ball Mill (WBM) value.

SPECIAL COMMENTARY ON CONCRETE AND EARTHWORK

UTILITY TRENCH EXCAVATION

Trench excavation for utilities should be sloped or braced in the interest of safety. Attention is drawn to OSHA Safety and Health Standards (29 CFR 1926/1910), Subpart P, regarding trench excavations greater than 5 feet in depth.

FIELD SUPERVISION AND DENSITY TESTING

Construction observation and testing by a field technician under the direction of a licensed geotechnical engineer should be provided. Some adjustments in the test frequencies may be required based upon the general fill types and soil conditions at the time of fill placement.

It is recommended that all site and subgrade preparation, proofrolling, and pavement construction be monitored by a qualified engineering firm. Density tests should be performed to verify proper compaction and moisture content of any earthwork. Inspection should be performed prior to and during concrete placement operations.

14805 Trinity Boulevard, Fort Worth, Texas 76155
Geotechnical 817.529.8464 Corporate 940.735.3733
www.dsenglabs.com

Texas Engineering Firm Registration # F-12796
Oklahoma Engineering Firm Certificate of Authorization CA 7181



PART E

BID QUANTITIES

Construction of South County Road 1232 Extension at Monahan's Draw

Roadway Improvements to Serve Midland County					
		Quantity	Unit	Unit Price	Total
Base Bid					
Item	Description				
1	Preparation of R.O.W.	22	Sta.		
2	5 Strand Barb Wire Fence with H Braces	3,795	L.F.		
3	Earthwork*	38,086	C.Y.		
4	Import*	31,399	C.Y.		
5	Subgrade Preparation	8,800	S.Y.		
6	Prime Coat**	960	Gal.		
7	Flexible Base (Roadway and Driveways)	2,499	C.Y.		
8	HMA Pavement - 3" thickness - Type D **	552	Ton		
9	32'x100' Pitched Concrete Pavement Section	13	Ea.		
10	60'x5' Pipeline Cap	4	Ea.		
11	Reflective Marking (Type 1) 4" Double Yellow Striped	22	Sta.		
12	Reflective Marking (Type 1) 4" Solid White Striped	22	Sta.		
13	Surface Preparation for Pavement Marking	22	Sta.		
14	IN SM RD SN SUP&AM TY10BWG(1) SA (P)	4	Ea.		
15	Aluminum Signs	30	S.F.		
16	CONTECH BRIDGECORE SYSTEM	1	LS		
17	Headwall (PW) (CONTECH BRIDGECORE SYSTEM) (10'-6")	2	Ea.		
18	MTL W-BEAM GD FEN (STEEL POST)	518	L.F.		
19	RAIL (TY T66)	732	L.F.		
20	MTL THRIE-BEAM GD FEN (TIM POST)	4	Ea.		
21	50' Guardrail Terminal MSKT-MASH-TL-3	2	Ea.		

Construction of South County Road 1232 Extension at Monahan's Draw

Roadway Improvements to Serve Midland County		Quantity	Unit	Unit Price	Total
Base Bid					
Item	Description				
22	10' Downstream Anchor Terminal (DAT)	2	Ea.		
23	Erosion Control	1	LS		
24	Traffic Control	1	LS		
25	Mobilization	1	LS		
TOTAL BASE BID					
CONSTRUCTION START DATE					
TOTAL CALENDAR DAYS					

Contractor shall notify the Engineer of Record of any discrepancies in quantities prior to the commencement of construction.

* Quantities do not include factors for compaction and expansion.

** Rates used for calculation purposes only:

Prime Coat: 0.3 Gal/SY

HMA Pavement - 3" thickness - Type D: 115 lb/SY*in